

FOUNDATIONS OF LATIN

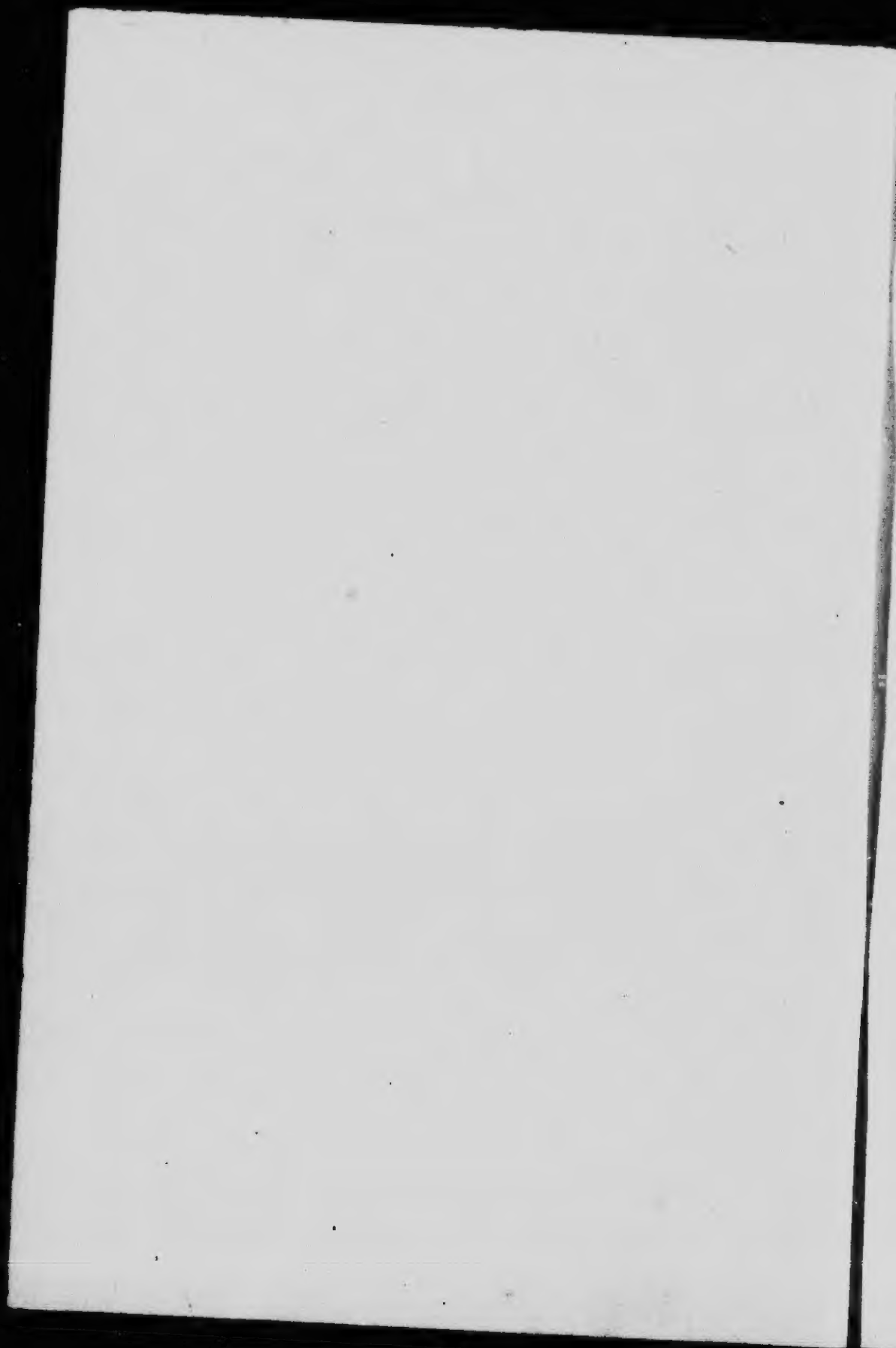
BENNETT

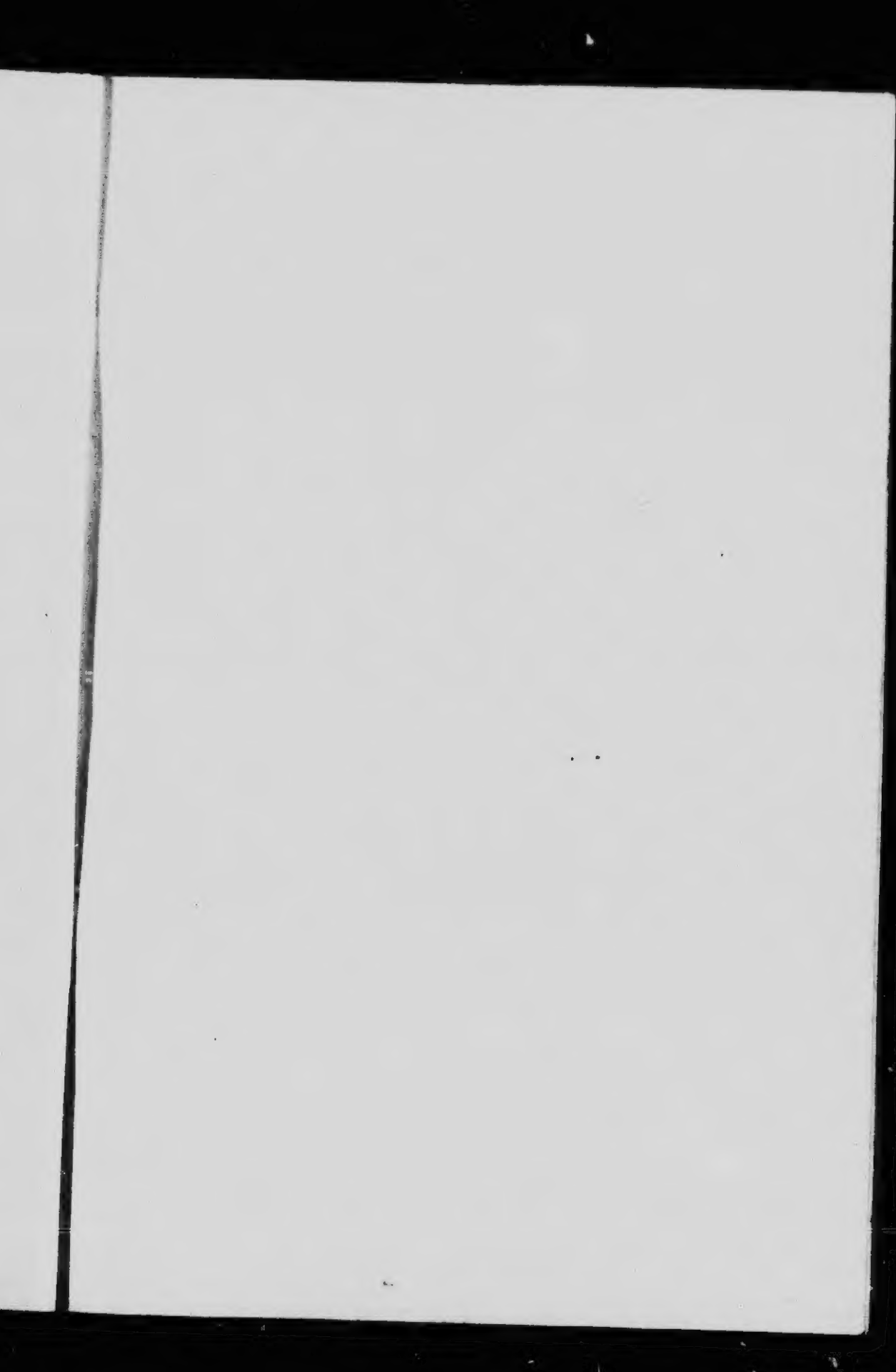
TORONTO

THE GINN PRESS COMPANY

~~3.00~~
~~200~~

14





BENNETT'S LATIN SERIES.

LATIN GRAMMAR. 12mo. cloth, 288 pages.

LATIN LESSONS. 16mo. cloth, 191 pages.

FIRST YEAR LATIN (preparatory to Caesar). 12mo. cloth, 288 pages.

FOUNDATIONS OF LATIN 12mo. cloth, 250 pages.

NEW LATIN COMPOSITION (based on Caesar and Cicero). 12mo. cloth, 286 pages.

PREPARATORY LATIN WRITER (based on Caesar). 16mo. cloth, 202 pages.

LATIN COMPOSITION (based on Cicero). 16mo. cloth, 172 pages.

QUANTITATIVE READING OF LATIN POETRY. 12mo. paper, 49 pages.

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, Books I.-IV. 12mo. cloth, 354 pages.

CICERO'S SELECTED ORATIONS. 12mo. cloth, 374 pages.

VIRGIL'S AENEID, Books I.-VI. 12mo. cloth, 491 pages.

BENNETT'S LATIN SERIES

THE
FOUNDATIONS OF LATIN

A BOOK FOR BEGINNERS

BY

CHARLES E. BENNET.

GOLDWIN SMITH PROFESSOR OF LATIN
IN CORNELL UNIVERSITY

REVISED EDITION

ALLYN & BACON, CHICAGO
TORONTO
THE COPP, CLARK CO., LIMITED

PA2087

B4

1907

**COPYRIGHT, 1898 AND 1903,
BY CHARLES E. BENNETT.**

ADO

**Notepad Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Barwick & Smith
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.**

PREFACE.

THE great favor with which the first edition of this book was received has prompted me to endeavor to meet the only criticism upon it that has been brought to my attention. This criticism touched the amount of matter offered for translation in the daily lessons. Some teachers found this amount too little, and it is to meet their wishes and needs that the present revised edition is now issued. The number of sentences in the exercises has been increased fully thirty-five per cent as compared with that in the first edition. Besides this, frequent review lessons have been added and some twenty simple passages of continuous discourse have been inserted at suitable points. Most of these have been taken, with the permission of Messrs. Longmans, Green & Co., from their *First Latin Reading Book*. It is hoped that they may add an element of interest to the book without detracting from its disciplinary value.

CHARLES E. BENNETT.

CORNELL UNIVERSITY, ITHACA, N.Y.,
December, 1902.

In reprinting this volume, I have changed the marking of most vowels before *gn*. Recent investigation has shown that, except in *rēgnum*, *rēgnō*, and a few other words, the vowel is regularly short before *gn*. I also now regard the *a* of *maximus*, *maximē* as short, and have so marked it.

March, 1907.

C. E. B.

PREFACE TO FIRST EDITION.

TWENTY years ago the beginner's Latin books published in this country followed the plan of an orderly development, first of the forms, and then of the syntax, of the language. Since that time a different practice has been inaugurated, and most books for beginners now present no connected and systematic development either of forms or of syntax. The conjugation of the verb, for example, is not given connectedly and continuously, but is variously dismembered and scattered throughout the book. So in the syntax the different constructions of a case or a mood are not presented in connection with each other, but are mutually detached and introduced one by one, here and there.

This plan has long seemed to me pedagogically unsound, and in practice I fear that it has not enabled us to realize the best results in our elementary Latin instruction. To me no principle of teaching seems more vital and fundamental than that of presenting together to the pupil those things that naturally belong together. This conviction is not merely founded in theory, but has been steadily forced upon me by actual experience. Hence it has appeared to me psychologically more natural in elementary Latin teaching to present in conjunction with each other the different declensions of nouns, the several conjugations of the verb, the various constructions of the accusative, the genitive, the ablative, *etc.* That these different categories which I have just enumerated do naturally belong together and have an organic connection seems to be

recognized by the universal custom of so presenting them in our Latin grammars.

Again, it is of great importance that the pupil should, in his first introduction to Latin, learn in conjunction with each other those facts that he is ultimately to associate together. This is impossible with the method of arrangement which I am criticising. Pupils spend a part of the first year, or possibly the whole of it, on the beginner's book. They then, in connection with their reading of Latin authors, make a systematic study of the grammar for the next three years. Is there not an unreasonable waste of energy, if the order of presentation in the one book is made to deviate widely from that followed in the other? And is there not a corresponding economy of time and effort, if the pupil becomes familiar in the beginner's book with the arrangement which must ultimately be followed in the grammar?

As justification for the prevalent custom of dismembering the declensions and conjugations in our beginner's books, it is doubtless urged that the acquisition of the forms is difficult, and that the plan of gradual presentation is intended to facilitate the process of learning them. But is it not a fallacy to imagine that any such hesitating, timid policy is likely to be successful in guiding the pupil to a mastery of his inflections? Is not the plan of resolute, systematic, sustained attack upon the declensions and conjugations the more logical, and has any other ever yielded as good results in actual experience? Certainly to me Latin pupils to-day seem to know their forms less accurately than did the pupils of twenty years ago, and this impression I find entertained by teachers of prominence in our best institutions.

The foregoing considerations have impelled me in this book to present the forms before the syntax, and in both forms and syntax to follow the usual order of the Latin grammars. The only deviations from rigid conformity with this programme have been the following:

The inflection of the present indicative of *sum* and of a paradigm of the present indicative active of a verb of the first conjugation are given at the outset.

Adjectives of the first and second declensions are given immediately after the second declension of nouns.

Such syntactical principles as are necessary for the comprehension and construction of simple sentences are also given in the earliest lessons; for example, the rules for subject, object, predicate nouns, appositives, agreement of adjectives with noun, and of verb with subject. But a very little here is amply sufficient for all rational needs until the forms have been acquired. '*One thing at a time*' is a good motto; and until the inflections are learned, and well learned, the peculiarities of Latin syntax would better be kept in the background.

The English-Latin exercises for the first thirty-two chapters (III.-XXXIV.) are intentionally detached from the lessons and placed together after Chapter LX., where they are numbered to correspond with the lessons with which they may be used. My purpose was to discourage the use of English-Latin exercises during the acquisition of the forms. Experience shows that the writing of even the simplest Latin exercises at the outset of one's study takes no small amount of time. These simple sentences involve a multitude of little details, — vocabulary, syntax, word-order, *etc.*, — as well as a knowledge of the inflections themselves. Of the ultimate indispensableness of such exercises, there is no question, but, during the acquisition of the forms, a rather long personal experience as teacher of elementary Latin has taught me to believe that the teacher can by skilful oral exercises and blackboard work on the forms themselves accomplish vastly more toward their mastery by the pupil than by devoting any amount of time to the writing of Latin exercises. The writing of Latin is admirably adapted to giving drill in Latin syntax, but it is not the most effective way of teaching the forms. The

amount of drill in the forms gained by a written exercise requiring half an hour in its preparation would hardly be as much as can be given in five minutes by the brisk oral questioning of an entire class or by simultaneous blackboard work; nor would it be nearly so effective. I would therefore earnestly advise deferring the English-Latin exercises until the beginning of the syntax, where such exercises regularly accompany each lesson. Pupils who have mastered their forms will find no difficulty with the English-Latin exercises in Chapters XXXV.-LX., even though they have not written the exercises of Chapters III.-XXXIV.

Special pains have been taken to make the English-Latin exercises throughout the book as simple as is consistent with the end they are intended to serve. Many elementary books appear to me to make this part of the work too difficult, and give for beginners sentences and passages which no freshman class that I have ever seen could render in Latin with credit.

The Vocabulary of the sixty chapters into which the body of the book is divided, consists of about 750 words, exclusive of proper names. These were selected on the following plan: I first made a list of the words common to Caesar and Nepos. There are some 1800 of these. This list was then reduced to its present size by eliminating all words used less than fifteen times in Caesar.¹ The Vocabulary, therefore, consists of the 750 words in most frequent use by Caesar and Nepos, and should consequently serve equally well as an introduction to either author. My first disposition had been to make the Vocabulary considerably larger, but in working out the details of the book I became fully persuaded of the wisdom of keeping the Vocabulary within narrow limits. The pupil cannot surmount all difficulties at the outset. If he secures

¹ As the sentences of the Latin exercises are based mainly on passages in Caesar, it was found convenient to add a small list of words of very frequent occurrence in that author, but not found in Nepos. These are mainly military terms, such as *legio*, *cohors*, *turris*, *agger*, *fossa*, etc.

a solid foundation in the way of forms and syntax, a vocabulary will be quickly gained with the beginning of continuous reading.

The sentences, in the great majority of cases, are taken directly from Caesar's *Commentaries*. Often a word has been added or omitted, or a tense has been changed, but the Latin will be recognized as essentially Caesar's.

The Selections for Reading which follow the lessons are the traditional fables along with the Roman history originally prepared by Professor Jacobs, from whose *Latin Reader* I have taken them. They are sufficiently easy, are interesting, and the Latin is in the main correct. In a few cases, where Jacobs's text shows inconsistency with classical usage, I have ventured to make the necessary changes.

In arranging the work by Chapters rather than by Lessons, it has been my purpose to preserve unity of subject-matter as far as possible. A 'chapter' does not necessarily mean that its contents are to be taken at a single lesson. With many pupils it will probably be found possible to take most of the chapters in one exercise, but where that is not feasible, the matter can easily be divided according to the necessities of the case.

I have received generous help from friends in the preparation of this book, and desire here to recognize my obligations to Professor C. L. Durham, Professor H. C. Elmer, and Mr. F. O. Bates of this University for their counsel and assistance.

CHARLES E. BENNETT.

CORNELL UNIVERSITY, ITHACA, N.Y.,
April 17, 1898.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

SOUNDS, QUANTITY, ACCENT.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. Alphabet. — Sounds. — Pronunciation. — Quantity. — Accent	I

PART II.

INFLECTIONS.

II. The Parts of Speech. — Inflection. — Nouns. — Gender. — Number. — Cases. — The Five Declensions	5
III. First Declension. — Paradigm of the Present Indicative Active of a Verb of the First Conjugation. — Subject. — Object. — Agreement of Verb	8
IV. Second Declension. — Inflection of the Present Indicative of <i>sum</i> . — Predicate Nouns. — Appositives	10
V. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. — Agree- ment of Adjectives	13
VI. Nouns of the Third Declension	16
VII. The Third Declension (continued)	19
VIII. The Fourth Declension. — The Fifth Declension	23
IX. Adjectives (continued). — Nine Irregular Adjectives. — Adjectives of the Third Declension	25
X. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued)	28
XI. Comparison of Adjectives	31
XII. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. — Numerals	33
XIII. Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive Pronouns. — Demon- strative Pronouns	36
XIV. Demonstrative Pronouns (continued). — The Intensive Pronoun	39
XV. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns. — Agree- ment of Relative Pronouns	42

Table of Contents.

CHAPTER		PAGE
XVI.	Conjugation. — The Four Conjugations. — Indicative of <i>sum</i>	45
XVII.	Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle of <i>sum</i>	48
XVIII.	Indicative Active of <i>amō</i> . — Verb Stems. — <i>A Dangerous Wedding</i>	50
XIX.	Active of <i>amō</i> (continued). — Verb Stems	53
XX.	Indicative Passive of <i>amō</i> . — Verb Stems. — <i>Old Roman Virtus</i>	55
XXI.	Passive of <i>amō</i> (continued). — Verb Stems. — Review	57
XXII.	Active Voice of <i>monēō</i>	60
XXIII.	Passive Voice of <i>monēō</i> . — <i>The Death of Epaminondas</i>	63
XXIV.	Active Voice of <i>regō</i>	66
XXV.	Passive Voice of <i>regō</i> . — <i>How the Day was Saved</i>	69
XXVI.	Active Voice of <i>audiō</i>	72
XXVII.	Passive Voice of <i>audiō</i> . — <i>Horatius at the Bridge</i>	75
XXVIII.	Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of the Third Conjugation	79
XXIX.	Deponent Verbs	83
XXX.	The Periphrastic Conjugations. — Review. — <i>How Corvinus Won his Name</i>	86
XXXI.	Irregular Verbs: <i>possum, dō</i> . — <i>The Lamb and the Wolf</i>	89
XXXII.	Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>ferō</i>	92
XXXIII.	Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>volō, nōlō, mālō, fiō</i> . — <i>The Philosopher and the King. — The Fox and the Grapes</i>	95
XXXIV.	Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>eō</i> . — Defective Verbs	98
XXXV.	Impersonal Verbs. — Questions and Answers. — Review	101

PART III.

SYNTAX.

XXXVI.	The Accusative. — <i>Incorruptible</i>	104
XXXVII.	The Accusative (continued)	107
XXXVIII.	The Dative	110
X XIX.	The Dative (continued)	112
XL.	The Genitive. — <i>Two Jests of Cicero. — The Frog and the Ox</i>	114
XLI.	The Genitive (continued). — Review	117
XLII.	The Ablative	120
XLIII.	The Ablative (continued). — <i>The Sibylline Books</i>	122

Table of Contents.

xi

CHAPTER	PAGE
XLIV. The Ablative (continued)	125
XLV. The Ablative (continued). — <i>The Trojan Horse</i>	127
XLVI. Syntax of Adjectives	130
XLVII. Syntax of Pronouns. — Review	132
XLVIII. The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences: Hortatory, Jussive, and Deliberative Subjunctive. — <i>The Haunted House, Part I.</i>	135
XLIX. The Optative Subjunctive. — The Potential Subjunctive. — Imperative	138
L. Moods in Dependent Clauses. — Clauses of Purpose. — Sequence of Tenses. — <i>The Haunted House, Part II.</i>	140
LI. Clauses of Characteristic. — Result Clauses. — Causal Clauses. — <i>The Sword of Damocles</i>	143
LII. Temporal Clauses: Clauses introduced by <i>postquam</i> , <i>ut</i> , <i>ubi</i> , <i>simul ac</i> , etc. — <i>Cum</i> -Clauses	146
LIII. Temporal Clauses (continued): Clauses introduced by <i>antequam</i> and <i>priusquam</i> . — Clauses introduced by <i>dum</i> , <i>dōnec</i> , and <i>quoad</i>	148
LIV. Substantive Clauses: Substantive Clauses developed from the Jussive. — Substantive Clauses after Verbs of <i>hindering</i>	150
LV. Substantive Clauses (continued): Substantive Clauses developed from the Optative. — Substantive Clauses of Result. — Indirect Questions. — Review. — <i>The Boy and the Dolphin, Part I.</i>	152
LVI. Conditional Sentences. — Clauses introduced by <i>quamvis</i> and <i>quamquam</i> . — <i>The Boy and the Dolphin, Part II.</i>	155
LVII. Indirect Discourse	158
LVIII. The Infinitive. — ' <i>If You Want a Thing Done</i> , —'	161
LIX. Participles	164
LX. The Gerund and Gerundive. — The Gerundive Construction. — The Supine. — Review	166
ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES ON CHAPTERS III.-XXXIV.	169
SELECTIONS FOR READING:	
Fables	178
Roman History	181
NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING	196
GENERAL LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	203
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	231

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	= <i>ablative.</i>	inf.	= <i>infinitive</i>
acc.	= <i>accusative.</i>	interrog.	= <i>interrogative.</i>
adj.	= <i>adjective.</i>	intr.	= <i>intransitive.</i>
adv.	= <i>adverb, adverbial.</i>	lit.	= <i>literally.</i>
c.	= <i>common (gender).</i>	masc.	= <i>masculine.</i>
comp.	= <i>comparative.</i>	n., neut.	= <i>neuter.</i>
conj.	= <i>conjunction.</i>	nom.	= <i>nominative.</i>
dat.	= <i>dative.</i>	p., pp.	= <i>page, pages.</i>
decl.	= <i>declension.</i>	pass.	= <i>passive.</i>
dep.	= <i>deponent.</i>	pl., plu.	= <i>plural.</i>
e.g.	= <i>exempli gratia = for ex- ample.</i>	prep.	= <i>preposition.</i>
etc.	= <i>et cetera = and so forth.</i>	pres.	= <i>present.</i>
f.	= <i>feminine.</i>	pron.	= <i>pronoun.</i>
gen.	= <i>genitive.</i>	rel.	= <i>relative.</i>
i.e.	= <i>id est = that is.</i>	sc.	= <i>supply.</i>
impera.	= <i>impersonal, imperson- ally.</i>	sing.	= <i>singular.</i>
indecl.	= <i>indeclinable.</i>	sup., super.	= <i>superlative.</i>
indic.	= <i>indicative.</i>	tr., trans.	= <i>transitive.</i>
		w.	= <i>with.</i>
		1, with verbs	= <i>1st conjugation.</i>

PART I.

SOUNDS, QUANTITY, ACCENT.

CHAPTER I.¹

1. ALPHABET.

The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that the Latin has no *w*.

2. SOUNDS CLASSIFIED.

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The other letters are Consonants. The Diphthongs are *ae, oe, au, eu, ui*.

3. PRONUNCIATION.²

a) Vowels.

<i>ā</i> as in <i>father</i> ;	<i>ā</i> as in the first syllable of <i>ahd</i> ;
<i>ē</i> as in <i>they</i> ;	<i>ē</i> as in <i>met</i> ;
<i>ī</i> as in <i>machine</i> ,	<i>ī</i> as in <i>pin</i> ;
<i>ō</i> as in <i>note</i> ;	<i>ō</i> as in <i>obey, melody</i> ;
<i>ū</i> as in <i>rude</i> ;	<i>ū</i> as in <i>put</i> ;

y like French *u*, German *ü*.

¹ On the arrangement of this book by chapters, see Preface.

² The system of pronunciation here given is that employed by the ancient Romans themselves. It is often called the 'Roman method.'

³ Vowels which are long in quantity have a horizontal line above them, as *ā, ī, ō*, etc. Short vowels either have the curved mark (*ē, ē*), or are left unmarked.

b) Diphthongs.

ae like ai in *aie*;oe like oi in *oil*;au like ow in *how*;

eu with its two elements, e and u, pronounced in rapid succession;

ui occurs mainly in *cui* and *huic*. These are pronounced as though spelled *kwee* and *wheek*.

c) Consonants.

b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu are pronounced as in English except that *bs*, *bt* are pronounced *ps*, *pt*.c is always pronounced as *k*.t is always pronounced as plain *t*, never with the sound of *sh*, as in Eng. *oration*.g always as in *get*; when *ngu* precedes a vowel, *gu* has the sound of *gw*, as in *anguis*, *languidus*.j¹ has the sound of *y* as in *yet*.

r was probably slightly trilled with the tip of the tongue.

s always as in *sin*, *gas*; in *suadeo*, *suavis*, *suasor*, and in compounds and derivatives of these words, *su* has the sound of *sw*.v like *w*.x always as *ks*; never like Eng. *gz* or *z*.z is best pronounced as Eng. *z*.ph, ch, th, are to be pronounced practically like our simple *p*, *k*, *t*. Doubled letters like *ll*, *mm*, *tt*, etc., should be pronounced with an endeavor to articulate both members of the combination distinctly.

4.

QUANTITY.

A. Quantity of Vowels.

A vowel is long or short according to the length of time consumed in its pronunciation. As will be seen by comparing the sounds given in § 3, the long sounds take considerably more time to pronounce than the short ones. For example, the *i* of *machine* takes more time than the *i* of *pin*. No absolute rule can be given for determining the quantity of Latin vowels. The pupil can become familiar with them only by observing the quantity as marked in

¹ Some books print *i* instead of *j*.

the paradigms, the vocabularies, and the exercises. Yet the following principles are of aid : —

1. *A vowel is long, —*

- a) before *ni, ne*, as *infāns, cōnscēnsus*.
- b) when the result of contraction; as *nīlum* for *nihilum*; *cōpia* for *co-opia*.

2. *A vowel is short, —*

- a) before *nt, nd*; as *amant, amandus*. A few rare exceptions occur in cases of compounds whose first member has a long vowel; as *nōndum* (for *nōn dum*).
- b) before another vowel or *h*¹; as *meus, trahō*. Some exceptions occur, chiefly in proper names derived from the Greek; as *Aenēas*.

N.B. — Long vowels should always be pronounced long (that is the only thing that 'long' means); short vowels should be pronounced short.

B. Quantity of Syllables.

A syllable is long or short according to *the length of time* it takes to pronounce such syllable.

1. *A syllable is long* (that is, it takes a long time to pronounce it), —

- a) if it contains a long vowel; as *māter, rēgnum, diūs*.²
- b) if it contains a diphthong; as *causae, foedus*.³
- c) if it contains a short vowel followed by *x, z*, or any two consonants (except a mute followed by *l* or *r*)⁴; as *axis, restat, gaza, amantis*.⁴

2. *A syllable is regularly short* if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel, by a single consonant, or by a mute with *l* or *r*; as *mea, amat, patris, volucris*.⁵

¹ *h* was pronounced so lightly as to be entirely disregarded, whether singly or in combination.

² Such syllables are sometimes said to be long by nature.

³ The mutes are *p, c, t*; *b, d, g*.

⁴ Such syllables are sometimes said to be long by position.

⁵ Such syllables are sometimes said to be short by position.

5.

ACCENT.

1. There are as many syllables in a Latin word as there are separate vowels and diphthongs.

2. Words of two syllables are accented upon the first; as *tégit*, *mórem*.

3. Words of more than two syllables are accented upon the penult (next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise upon the antepenult (second from the last); as *amāvī*, *miníster*, *míserum*.

6.

EXERCISE.

Pronounce the following words, observing carefully the proper sound of each letter, and placing the accent upon the proper syllable. Remember to pronounce all long vowels long, all short vowels short. Take care of the vowels, and the syllables will take care of themselves.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Māiōrum, amīcus, Athēnae. | 2. Queō, pāscō, poscō. |
| 3. Juvenis, porrēctūra, abiimus. | 4. Amīcītia, obtineō, anti- |
| quus. | 5. Eurōpa, Charmidēs, exemplum. |
| 6. Ingerō, exi- | 7. Olympos, mittō, nātiōnēs. |
| guitās, sanguis. | 8. Foe- |
| 9. Pervolat, efferre, instituerat. | 10. Arguō, cui, Philippi. |
| 11. Percussus, rēxi, pereō. | 12. Jam, suāvitās, suēscō. |
| 13. Concēdō, signātor, referō. | 14. Īnserō, obserō, persuādet. |

PART II.

INFLECTIONS.

CHAPTER II.

7. THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech in Latin are the same as in English; *viz.*, Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections; but the Latin has no article.

8. INFLECTION.

Of these eight parts of speech, the first four are capable of **Inflection**, that is, of undergoing change of form to express modifications of meaning. In the case of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, this process is called **Declension**; in the case of Verbs, **Conjugation**.

9. NOUNS.

1. A Noun is the name of a *person, place, thing, or quality*; as *Caesar, Caesar*; *Rōma, Rome*; *penna, feather*; *virtūs, courage*.

2. Nouns have Gender, Number, and Case.

10. GENDER.

1. There are in Latin, as in English, three Genders: the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

■

2. Gender in Latin may be either natural (that is, based on sex, as gender always is in English) or grammatical (not based on sex).

3. *Natural Gender.* As a rule only nouns denoting *persons* have natural gender, and these are Masculine, if they denote males, as *nauta, sailor*; Feminine, if they denote females, as *māter, mother*.

4. *Grammatical Gender.* When nouns have grammatical gender, the gender is determined: —

A. *By signification.* Thus: —

- a) Names of *Rivers, Winds, and Months* are Masculine; as, *Séquana, Seine; Eurus, East Wind; Aprilis, April.*
- b) Names of *Trees, Countries, Towns, and Islands* are Feminine; as, *quercus, oak; Pontus, Pontus; Corinthus, Corinth; Rhodus, Rhodes.*
- c) *Indeclinable nouns* are Neuter; as, *nefas, wrong.*

B. *By ending.*

The principles for gender by ending are given later, under the five declensions.

11.

NUMBER.

Latin has two Numbers, the Singular and the Plural. The Singular denotes one object; the Plural more than one.

12.

CASES.

1. There are six Cases in Latin: —

Nominative,	Case of Subject;
Genitive,	Objective with <i>of</i> ;
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> ;
Accusative,	Case of Direct Object;
Vocative,	Case of Address;
Ablative,	Objective with <i>by, from, in, with.</i>

2. **LOCATIVE.** Vestiges of another case, the **Locative** (denoting place where), occur in names of towns and in a few other words.

3. **OBLIQUE CASES.** The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called **Oblique Cases**.

4. **FORMATION OF THE CASES.** The different cases were originally formed by joining certain **case-endings** to a fundamental part called the **stem**. Thus **portam** (Accusative Singular) was formed by joining the case-ending **m** to the stem **porta-**. But in most cases the final vowel of the stem has united so closely with the original case-ending, that the latter has become more or less obscured. The apparent case-ending thus resulting is called a **termination**.

13. THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

There are five Declensions in Latin, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the Stem, and also by the Termination of the Genitive Singular, as follows:—

DECLENSION.	FINAL LETTER OF STEM.	GEN. TERMINATION.
First	a	-ae
Second	o	-i
Third	{ i Some consonant }	-is
Fourth	u	-u
Fifth	e	-i

Cases alike in Form.

1. The Vocative is regularly like the Nominative, except in the Singular of nouns in **-us** of the Second Declension.
2. The Dative and Ablative Plural are always alike.
3. In Neuters the Accusative and Nominative are always alike, and in the Plural end in **-a**.
4. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions, the Accusative Plural is regularly like the Nominative.

CHAPTER III.

FIRST DECLENSION. — *a*-STEMS.

14. These end in *-ā*, weakened from *-a*. They are Feminine, and are declined as follows:—

Porta, gate; stem, portā-.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
CASES.	MEANINGS.	TERMINATIONS.		MEANINGS.	TERMINATIONS.
Nom. porta	a gate (subject)	-ā	portae	gates (subject)	-ae
Gen. portae	of a gate	-ae	portarum	of gates	-arum
Dat. portae	to or for a gate	-ae	portis	to or for gates	-is
Acc. portam	a gate (object)	-am	portas	gates (object)	-as
Voc. porta	O gate!	-ā	portae	O gates!	-ae
Abl. portā	with, by, from, in, a gate	-ā	portis	with, by, from, in, gates.	-is

1. The Latin has no article, and *porta* may mean either a *gate* or the *gate*; and in the Plural, *gates* or the *gates*.

15. Peculiarities of Nouns of the First Declension.

1. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER. Nouns denoting males are Masculine; as, *nauta, sailor; agricola, farmer*.

2. SPECIAL CASE-ENDINGS,—

- a) The Locative Singular ends in *-ae*; as, *Rōmae, at Rome*.
- b) *Dea, goddess*, and *filia, daughter*, commonly form the Dative and Ablative Plural with the termination *-abus*; as, *deabus, filibus*. This is in order to distinguish these words from the corresponding cases of *deus, god*, and *filius, son*.

16. Paradigm of the Present Indicative Active of a Verb of the First Conjugation.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	<i>amō, I love.</i>	<i>amāmus, we love.</i>
	<i>amās, thou lovest, you love.</i>	<i>amātis, you love.</i>
	<i>amat, he, she, it loves.</i>	<i>amant, they love.</i>

2. All verbs of the First Conjugation are inflected like *amō*. Such verbs are given in the General Vocabulary with the numeral 1.

3. In Latin the Subject of the verb, if a personal pronoun (*I, thou, he, we, etc.*), is not expressed unless emphatic, but is implied in the verb.

17.

• Principles of Syntax.

1. The Subject of the Verb stands in the Nominative.
2. The Object of the Verb stands in the Accusative.
3. The Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person.

18.

VOCABULARY.

accūsō, *I accuse.*

agricola, *ae, m., farmer.*

cōpia, *ae, f., plenty; in plural,*

cōpiae, ārum, troops.

et, *conj., and.*

filia, *ae, f., daughter.*

Galba, *ae, m., Galba (a man's name).*

incitō, *I urge on, encourage.*

incola, *ae, m., inhabitant.*

insula, *ae, f., island.*

Italia, *ae, f., Italy.*

laudō, *I praise.*

vāstō, *I lay waste.*

vocō, *I call, summon.*

EXERCISES.¹

19. 1. *Agricolae, agricolā, agricolārum.* 2. *Insulae, insulis.*
 3. *Italiae, Galbae.* 4. *Filia, filiārum, filiabus.* 5. *Incolae, incolis.* 6. *Cōpiārum, cōpiis, cōpiās.* 7. *Italiam, insulārum, filiās.* 8. *Agricolis, filiam, filiae.* 9. *Incolārum, cōpiam.*
 20. 1. *Filiās agricolae laudāmus.*² 2. *Galba cōpiās incitat.*
 3. *Cōpiae Galbae Italiam vāstant.* 4. *Galbam laudāmus.*
 5. *Cōpiās Galbae laudō.* 6. *Incolās insulārum accūsātis.*
 7. *Galba agricolam vocat.* 8. *Insulās vāstāmus.* 9. *Galbam et agricolās vocāmus.* 10. *Filiās agricolae vocō.* 11. *Agricolās incitāmus.* 12. *Filiam Galbae laudant.* 13. *Agricolās laudās.* 14. *Filiās agricolārum vocātis.*

¹ For exercises on translating English into Latin, see p. 169 and Preface.

² The verb in Latin ordinarily stands at the end of the sentence.

CHAPTER IV.

SECOND DECLENSION. — *ō*-STEMS.

21. Pure Latin nouns of the Second Declension end in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir*, Masculine; *-um*, Neuter; and are declined as follows: —

Hortus, garden; stem, <i>hortō-</i> .			Bellum, war; stem, <i>bellō-</i> .		
			TERMINATION.		
SINGULAR.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hortus</i>	<i>-us</i>	<i>bellum</i>	<i>-um</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hortī</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>bellī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hortō</i>	<i>-ō</i>	<i>bellō</i>	<i>-ō</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hortum</i>	<i>-um</i>	<i>bellum</i>	<i>-um</i>
	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>horte</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>bellum</i>	<i>-um</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hortō</i>	<i>-ō</i>	<i>bellō</i>	<i>ō</i>
PLURAL.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hortī</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>bella</i>	<i>-a</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hortōrum</i>	<i>-ōrum</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>	<i>-ōrum</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hortīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hortōs</i>	<i>-ōs</i>	<i>bella</i>	<i>-a</i>
	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>hortī</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>bella</i>	<i>-a</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hortīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>
Puer, boy; stem, <i>puerō-</i> .			Ager, field; stem, <i>agrō-</i> .	Vir, man; stem, <i>virō-</i> .	TERMINATION.
SINGULAR.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	Wanting
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>-ō</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>-um</i>
	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	Wanting
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>-ō</i>
PLURAL.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>-ōrum</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>-ōs</i>
	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>

22. Peculiarities of Inflection in the Second Declension.

1. Most nouns in *-er* in common use are declined like *ager*, not like *puer*.

2. Nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* throughout the best period of the language formed the Genitive Singular in *-i* (instead of *-ii*); as, —

<i>Nom. ingenium</i>	<i>filius</i>
<i>Gen. ingení</i>	<i>fili</i>

These Genitives accent the penult, even when it is short.

3. The Locative Singular ends in *-i*; as, *Corinthi*, at *Corinth*.

23. Inflection of the Present Indicative of the Verb *sum*.

SINGULAR.

<i>sum</i> ,	<i>I am.</i>
<i>es</i> , ¹	<i>thou art, you are.</i>
<i>est</i> , ¹	<i>he, she, it is.</i>

PLURAL.

<i>sumus</i> ,	<i>we are.</i>
<i>estis</i> , ¹	<i>you are.</i>
<i>sunt</i> ,	<i>they are.</i>

24. Principles of Syntax.

1. A Predicate Noun (that is, a noun limiting its subject through the medium of the verb *to be*, or some similar word, as *seem*, *become*) agrees with its subject in case; as, —

Mercurius est deus, *Mercury is a god.*

2. An Appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains; as, —

Mercurius, deus, *Mercury, the god.*

¹ Pronounce these words severally, *es*, *est*, *estis*, not *ēs*, *ēst*, *ēstis*

25.

VOCABULARY.

amicus, I, m., *friend*.
auxilium, I (II), n., *aid, help*.
Belgae, ōrum, m. pl., *Belgians*, a
 Gallic tribe.
castra, ōrum, n. pl., *a camp*.
Galli, ōrum, m. pl., *Gauls*.
Germāni, ōrum, m. pl., *Germans*.
implōrō, I *entreat*.
oppidum, I, n., *town, walled town*.

oppugnō, I *attack, assault*.
periculum, I, n., *danger*.
proelium, I (II), n., *battle*.
Sēquani, ōrum, m. pl., *Sēquani*,
 a Gallic tribe.
vexō, I *harass, annoy; ravage*.
vicus, I, m., *village*.
vitō, I *avoid*.

EXERCISES.

26. 1. Oppidi, oppidōrum. 2. Estis, es. 3. Vicō, vicis.
 4. Pericula, periculōrum. 5. Amici, amicōrum, amicis.
 6. Auxilium, auxiliō. 7. Agri, agris. 8. Periculō, vi-
 cum, oppidis. 9. Proelia, amice. 10. Sunt, sumus, est.
 11. Castrōrum, castris.

27. 1. Sumus amici¹ Gallōrum. 2. Belgae et Sēquani
 auxilium implōrant. 3. Sēquani agricolās, incolās vicō-
 rum, vexant. 4. Germāni oppida Belgārum oppugnant.
 5. Germāni sunt agricolae. 6. Galba, amicus Gallōrum,
 castra Germānōrum oppugnat. 7. Amicōs Gallōrum laudā-
 mus. 8. Cōpiae Galbae Sēquanōs proeliō vexant. 9. Peri-
 cula et bella vitāmus. 10. Estis amici agricolārum.
 11. Belgae vicōs et agrōs Germānōrum vexant. 12. Auxi-
 lium Gallōrum implōrāmus. 13. Galba pericula proeli vitat

¹ A predicate noun may (and often does) follow the verb.

CHAPTER V.

ADJECTIVES.

28. Adjectives denote *quality*. They are declined like nouns, and fall into two classes, —

1. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.
2. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

In these the Masculine is declined like *hortus*, *puer*, or *ager*, the Feminine like *porta*, and the Neuter like *bellum*.

29. Thus, Masculine like *hortus* : —

Bonus, good.

SINGULAR.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i> boni	bonae	boni
<i>Dat.</i> bono	bonae	bono
<i>Acc.</i> bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i> bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i> bono	bona	bono

PLURAL.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> boni	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i> bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
<i>Dat.</i> bonis	bonis	bonis
<i>Acc.</i> bonos	bonas	bona
<i>Voc.</i> boni	bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i> bonis	bonis	bonis

14 *Adjectives of First and Second Declensions.*

30. Masculine like *puer* : —

Tener, tender.

SINGULAR.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> tener	tenera	tenerum
<i>Gen.</i> teneri	tenerae	teneri
<i>Dat.</i> tenero	tenerae	tenero
<i>Acc.</i> tenerum	teneram	tenerum
<i>Voc.</i> tener	tenera	tenerum
<i>Abl.</i> tenero	tenera	tenero
PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> teneri	tenerae	tenera
<i>Gen.</i> tenerorum	tenerarum	tenerorum
<i>Dat.</i> teneris	teneris	teneris
<i>Acc.</i> teneros	teneras	tenera
<i>Voc.</i> teneri	tenerae	tenera
<i>Abl.</i> teneris	teneris	teneris

31. Masculine like *ager* : —

Sacer, sacred.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> sacer	sacra	sacrum	sacri	sacrae	sacra
<i>Gen.</i> sacri	sacrae	sacri	sacrorum	sacrarum	sacrorum
<i>Dat.</i> sacro	sacrae	sacro	sacris	sacris	sacris
<i>Acc.</i> sacrum	sacram	sacrum	sacros	sacras	sacra
<i>Voc.</i> sacer	sacra	sacrum	sacri	sacrae	sacra
<i>Abl.</i> sacro	sacra	sacro	sacris	sacris	sacris

1. Most adjectives in *-er* are declined like *sacer*. Of adjectives in common use only the following are declined like *tener* : *asper, rough*, *liber, free* ; *miser, wretched*.

32.

Principles of Syntax.

1. An Adjective agrees with the noun which it limits in Gender, Number, and Case.

2. An Adjective limiting its noun directly is called an *attributive* adjective, as *via longa, a long journey* ; an Adjective limiting its noun through the medium of the verb

esse, to be, or some similar verb, is called a *predicate* adjective, as *via est longa*, the journey is long; *via videtur longa*, the journey seems long.

33.

VOCABULARY.

Britannia, ae, f., Britain.

dīmicō, I contend.

Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl., the Helvetii, a Gallic tribe.

jūmentum, I, n., beast of burden.

légātus, I, m., lieutenant.

magnus, a, um, large, great.

multus, a, um, much; pl., many.

numerus, I, m., number.

parō, I prepare, get ready.

parvus, a, um, small.

populus, I, m., people.

pulcher, ōra, ōrum, beautiful.

Rōmānus, a, um, Roman; — as noun, m., a Roman.

superō, I overcome.

victōria, ae, f., victory.

EXERCISES.

34. 1. *Populi Rōmānī, populō Rōmānō.* 2. *Magnae¹ victōriae, magnārum victōriarum.* 3. *Multa jūmenta, multis jūmentis.* 4. *Multae insulae, multās insulās.* 5. *Filiae pulchrae, filiabus pulchris.* 6. *Parvi vicī, parvōrum vicōrum.* 7. *Magnum proelium, magna proelia, multōrum proeliōrum.* 8. *Magnum numerum, magnō numerō.* 9. *Multi incolae, multōs incolās.* 10. *Parvārum insulārum, parvae insulae.*

35. 1. *Filiae agricolae sunt pulchrae et bonae.* 2. *Populus Rōmānus Gallōs superat.* 3. *Galba, légātus Rōmānus, magnum oppidum Sēquanōrum oppugnat.* 4. *Sēquanī multis proeliis dīmicant.* 5. *Britannia est magna insula.* 6. *Victōria populi Rōmānī est magna.* 7. *Insula est parva.* 8. *Helvētīi magnum numerum jūmentōrum parant.* 9. *Magnae cōpiae dīmicant.* 10. *Multa jūmenta parātis.* 11. *Cōpiae Rōmānae agrōs Gallōrum vexant.* 12. *Magnum bellum parāmus.* 13. *Galba magnum numerum Gallōrum superat.*

¹ The attributive adjective (see § 32, 2) in Latin, as in English, more commonly precedes the word which it limits. This is especially true of adjectives of number, amount, etc. Yet other adjectives when used attributively often follow the noun; see, for example, § 32, 5; 35, 2.

CHAPTER VI.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

36. Nouns of the Third Declension end in -a, -e, -i, -o, -y, -o, -l, -n, -r, -s, -t, -x. The Third Declension includes several distinct classes of Stems: —

I. Pure Consonant-Stems.

II. i-Stems.

III. Mixed Stems. (Consonant-Stems which have partially adapted themselves to the inflection of i-Stems.)

I. CONSONANT-STEMS.

37. 1. In these the stem appears in its unaltered form in all the oblique cases, so that the actual case-endings may be clearly recognized.

2. Consonant-Stems fall into several natural subdivisions, according as the stem ends in a Mute, Liquid, Nasal, or Spirant.

Mute-Stems

38. Mute-Stems may end, —

1. In a Labial (p); as, princeps -s.
2. In a Guttural (g or o); as, rēnex (rēmeg -s); dux (duc -s).
3. In a Dental (d or t); as, lapis (lapid -s); miles (mīle -s).

1. STEMS IN A LABIAL MUTE (p).

39. Princeps, m., chief.

	SINGULAR.	CASE- ENDING.	PLURAL.	CASE- ENDING.
Nom.	princeps	-s	principēs ²	-ēs
Gen.	principis ¹	-is	principum	-um
Dat.	principi	-i	principibus	-ibus
Acc.	principem	-em	principēs ²	-ēs
Voc.	princeps	-e	principēs ²	-ēs
Abl.	principe ²	-e	principibus	-ibus

¹ Pronounce *is*, not *is*. ² Pronounce *ēs*, not *ēs*. ³ Pronounce *ēs*, not *ēs*.

2. STEMS IN A GUTTURAL MUTE (g, c).

40. In these the termination -s of the Nominative Singular unites with the guttural, thus producing -x.

Rēmex, m., rower.		Dux, c., leader.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. rēmex	rēmigēs	dux	ducēs
Gen. rēmigis	rēmigum	ducis	ducum
Dat. rēmigi	rēmigibus	duci	ducibus
Acc. rēmigem	rēmigēs	ducem	ducēs
Voc. rēmex	rēmigēs	dux	ducēs
Abl. rēmige	rēmigibus	duce	ducibus

3. STEMS IN A DENTAL MUTE (d, t).

41. In these the final d or t of the Stem disappears in the Nominative Singular before the ending -s.

Lapis, m., stone.		Miles, m., soldier.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. lapis	lapidēs	miles	milites
Gen. lapidis	lapidum	militis	militem
Dat. lapidi	lapidibus	militi	mililibus
Acc. lapidem	lapidēs	militem	milites
Voc. lapis	lapidēs	miles	milites
Abl. lapide	lapidibus	milite	mililibus

Liquid Stems.

42. These usually end in -r; a few end in -l.

Victor, m., conqueror.		Aequor, n., sea.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. victor	victōrēs	aequor	aequora
Gen. victōris	victōrum	aequoris	aequorum
Dat. victōri	victōribus	aequori	aequoribus
Acc. victōrem	victōrēs	aequor	aequora
Voc. victor	victōrēs	aequor	aequora
Abl. victōre	victōribus	aequore	aequoribus

1. Masculine and Feminine Stems ending in a liquid, form the Nominative and Vocative Singular without case-ending.

2. The case-ending is also lacking in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of all neuters of the Third Declension.

43.

VOCABULARY.

agger, eris, m., *embankment, rampart.*
 altus, a, um, *high, deep.*
 Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar.*
 cōfirmō, *I establish.*
 cōsul, ulis, m., *consul.*
 cum, *with, prep. with abl.*
 eques, itis, m., *horseman; pl., cavalry.*

Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
 imperō, *I demand.*
 Mārcellus, i, m., *Marcellus.*
 obses, idis, c.,¹ *hostage.*
 pater, tris, m., *father.*
 pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
 virtūs, tūtis, f., *valor, virtue.*

EXERCISES.

44. 1. Pater cōsulis, patrī cōsulis. 2. Aggerēs alti, aggeribus altis. 3. Pāx bona. 4. Cōsulis boni, cōsulēs boni, cōsulum bonōrum. 5. Multi obsidēs, multis obsidibus. 6. Magnā virtūte, magnae virtūtis, magnam virtutem. 7. Militēs Rōmāni, militēs Rōmānōs, militi Rōmānō. 8. Magnae victōriae cōsulis Rōmāni. 9. Magnā virtūte Caesaris.

45. 1. Equitēs cum magnō periculō proeliō dimicant. 2. Multi militēs castra Gallōrum oppugnant. 3. Galba magnum numerum obsidum imperat. 4. Principēs Galliae pācem cōfirmant. 5. Virtutem ducum et militum Rōmānōrum laudāmus. 6. Agger castrōrum est altus. 7. Galba et Mārcellus sunt cōsulēs. 8. Dux rēmigēs laudat. 9. Caesar magnās cōpiās parat. 10. Militēs cum equitibus dimicant. 11. Ducēs Germānōrum pācem implōrant. 12. Caesar, dux Rōmānus, virtutem militum laudat. 13. Militēs Rōmāni multa oppida magnā virtūte oppugnant.

¹ Common gender; i.e., either m. or f. But such nouns are ordinarily treated as masculine.

CHAPTER VII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT-STEMS (Continued).

Nasal Stems

46. These end in *-n*, which often disappears in the Nom. Sing.

Leō, m., lion.		Nōmen, n., name.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. leō	leōnēs	nōmen	nōmina
Gen. leōnis	leōnum	nōminis	nōminum
Dat. leōni	leōnibus	nōmini	nōminibus
Acc. leōnem	leōnēs	nōmen	nōmina
Voc. leō	leōnēs	nōmen	nōmina
Abl. leōne	leōnibus	nōmine	nōminibus

Spirant or *s*-Stems.

47. Mōs, m., custom. Genus, n., race. Honor, m., honor.

SINGULAR.		
Nom. mōs	genus	honor
Gen. mōris	generis	honōris
Dat. mōri	generi	honōri
Acc. mōrem	genus	honōrem
Voc. mōs	genus	honor
Abl. mōre	genere	honōre
PLURAL.		
Nom. mōrēs	genera	honōrēs
Gen. mōrum	generum	honōrum
Dat. mōribus	generibus	honōribus
Acc. mōrēs	genera	honōrēs
Voc. mōrēs	genera	honōrēs
Abl. mōribus	generibus	honōribus

1. Note that the final *s* of the stem becomes *r* (between vowels) in the oblique cases. In some words, as *honor*, the *r* of the oblique cases has, by analogy, crept into the Nominative, displacing the earlier *s*.

II. *i*-STEMS.1. MASCULINE AND FEMININE *i*-STEMS.

48. These regularly end in *-is* in the Nominative Singular, and always have *-ium* in the Genitive Plural. Originally the Accusative Singular ended in *-im*, the Ablative Singular in *-i*, and the Accusative Plural in *-is*; but these endings have been largely displaced by *-em*, *-e*, and *-es*, the endings of Consonant-Stems.

49. *Turris*, *f.*, tower;
stem, *turri-*.

Hostis, *c.*, enemy;
stem, *hosti-*.

SINGULAR.			TERMINA- TION.	PLURAL.		TERMINA- TION.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>turres</i>	<i>hostes</i>	<i>-es</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>turrium</i>	<i>hostium</i>	<i>-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>turri</i>	<i>hosti</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>turribus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>turrim</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>-im, -em</i>	<i>turris (-es)</i>	<i>hostis (es)</i>	<i>-is, -es</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>turres</i>	<i>hostes</i>	<i>-es</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>turri</i>	<i>hoste</i>	<i>-i, -e</i>	<i>turribus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>

2. NEUTER *i*-STEMS.

50. These end in the Nominative Singular in *-e*, *-al*, and *-ar*. They always have *-i* in the Ablative Singular, *-ia* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and *-ium* in the Genitive Plural, thus holding more steadfastly to the *i*-character than do Masculine and Feminine *i*-Stems.

Sedile, *seat*; *Animal*, *animal*; *Calcar*, *spur*,
stem, *sedili-*. stem, *animālī-*. stem, *calcārī-*.

SINGULAR.			TERMINATION.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>sedile</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	Wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sedilis</i>	<i>animālis</i>	<i>calcāris</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sedili</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sedile</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	Wanting
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>sedile</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	Wanting
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sedili</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	-ī

PLURAL.			TERMINATION.
<i>Nom.</i> sedilia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Gen.</i> sedilium	animālium	calcārium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i> sedilibus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> sedilia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Voc.</i> sedilia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Abl.</i> sedilibus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus

1. In most words of this class the final -i of the stem is lost in the Nominative Singular; in others it appears as -e.

III. MIXED STEMS.

(Consonant-Stems that have partially adapted themselves to the inflection of I-stems.)

51. Many Consonant-Stems have so far adapted themselves to the inflection of I-stems as to take -ium in the Genitive Plural, and -ia in the Accusative Plural. Their true character as Consonant-Stems, however, is shown by the fact that they never take -im in the Accusative Singular, or -i in the Ablative Singular. The following words are examples of this class:—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Caedēs</i> , f., slaughter; stem, caed-.	<i>Arx</i> , f., citadel; stem, arc-.	<i>Caedēs</i> , f., slaughter; stem, caed-.	<i>Arx</i> , f., citadel; stem, arc-.
<i>Nom.</i> caedēs	arx	caedēs	arcēs
<i>Gen.</i> caedis	arcis	caedium	arcium
<i>Dat.</i> caedi	arci	caedibus	arcibus
<i>Acc.</i> caedem	arcem	caedēs, -ia	arcēs, -ia
<i>Voc.</i> caedēs	arx	caedēs	arcēs
<i>Abl.</i> caede	arce	caedibus	arcibus

1. The following classes of nouns belong to Mixed Stems:—

- Nouns in -ēs, with Genitive in -ia; as, nūbēs, aedēs, etc.
- Many monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by one or more consonants; as, urbs, mōns.
- Most nouns in -ns and -rs; as, oliēns, cohors.

52. General Principles of Gender in the Third Declension.

1. Nouns in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs are Masculine.
2. Nouns in -ās, -ēs, -is, -ys, -x, -s (preceded by a consonant): -dō, -gō (Genitive -inis); -iō (abstract and collective), -ūs (Genitive -ūtis or -ūdis) are Feminine.
3. Nouns in -a, -e, -ī, -y, -o, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -tis are Neuter.
4. There are many exceptions to the foregoing principles. These are noted in the Vocabularies.

53.

VOCABULARY.

arbor, oris, f., tree.	nōmen, inis, n., name.
civitas, tatis, f., state.	occupō, I take possession of, seize.
flūmen, inis, n., river.	pauci, ae, a, few, a few; used only in pl.
hostis, is, c., enemy.	Rhēnus, I, m., the Rhine.
in, in, on, prep. with the abl. denoting rest in a place.	silva, ae, f., forest.
mare, is, n., sea.	timor, ōris, m., fear.
mēns, mentis, f., mind.	turris, is, f., tower.
mōns, montis, m., mountain.	

EXERCISES.

54. 1. Arborēs silvae. 2. Civitātum, civitātibus. 3. Hostēs, hostis. 4. Magna animālia, magnis animālibus. 5. Montēs alti, montibus altis. 6. Timōrēs militum. 7. Magna flūmina, multōrum flūminum, in multis flūminibus. 8. Paucae civitatēs, paucas civitatēs. 9. In turribus altis, turris altas, turrium altarum. 10. Hostēs Rōmānōrum, nōmen montis.

55. 1. Militēs Rōmānī turris hostium oppugnant. 2. In magnō mari sunt multae insulae. 3. Nōmen flūminis est Rhēnus. 4. Multa animālia sunt in silvā. 5. Arborēs sunt altae. 6. Timor mentēs militum occupat. 7. Caesar hostēs proeliō superat. 8. Equitēs Rōmānī cum hostibus dimicant. 9. Caesar montem occupat. 10. Paucae civitatēs pacem cōfirmant. 11. Hostēs multas turris occupant. 12. In altō flūmine est parva insula. 13. Civitatēs Gallōrum pacem implōrant.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

FOURTH DECLENSION. — *ŭ*-STEMS.

56. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in *-us* Masculine, and *-a* Neuter. They are declined as follows: —

Fructus, fruit.		Cornū, horn.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. fructus	fructūs	cornū	cornua
Gen. fructūs	fructuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat. fructui	fructibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc. fructum	fructūs	cornū	cornua
Voc. fructus	fructūs	cornū	cornua
Abl. fructū	fructibus	cornū	cornibus

1. A few nouns in *-us* of the Fourth Declension are Feminine, particularly *manus*, *hand*, and *domus*, *house*.

FIFTH DECLENSION. — *ē*-STEMS.

57. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in *-ēs*, and are declined: —

Diēs, m., day.		Rēs, f., thing.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen. diēi	diērum	rēi	rērum
Dat. diēi	diēbus	rēi	rēbus
Acc. diem	diēs	rem	rē
Voc. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Abl. diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

1. The ending of the Genitive and Dative Singular is *-ēi*, instead of *-ei*, when a consonant precedes; as, *spēi*, *rēi*.

2. With the exception of *diēs* and *rēs*, most nouns of the Fifth Declension are not declined in the Plural.

3. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are regularly Feminine, except *diēs*, *day*, and *meridiēs*, *mid-day*, and even *diēs* is sometimes Feminine in the Singular.

58.

VOCABULARY.

aciēs, *ei*, f., line of battle.
 collocō, I place, arrange, station.
 cornū, ūs, n., horn; in military
 sense, wing of an army.
 dē, concerning, prep. with abl.
 dexter, tra, trum, right.
 dubitō, I doubt, am in doubt.
 fidēs, ei, f., fidelity, loyalty.

legiō, ōnis, f., legion.
 manus, ūs, f., hand; in military
 sense, band, force.
 nūntiō, I announce, report.
 portus, ūs, m., harbor.
 reliquus, a, um, remaining.
 senātus, ūs, m., senate.
 spēs, spei, f., hope.

EXERCISES.

59. 1. Fidei, dē fidē. 2. Manūs, manibus. 3. In aciē.
 4. Cornua, cornuum. 5. Portūs, portibus. 6. Senātūs, senā-
 tū. 7. Spēs auxilii, multī portūs, magnōs portūs. 8. In
 senātū, dē spē, spei. 9. Portui bonō, magnus numerus por-
 tuum, in portibus bonis. 10. Rērum multārum, dē rēbus
 multis, rem magnam, dē rē magnā.

60. 1. Galli cum magnā manū legiōnem Rōmānam oppugnant.
 2. Reliquae legiōnēs sunt in dextrō cornū. 3. In portū est
 parva insula. 4. Galba dē fidē Gallōrum dubitat. 5. Cae-
 sar multās rēs senātui nūntiat. 6. Militēs in aciē collocat.
 7. Sumus in magnā spē victōriae. 8. Portūs insulae sunt
 boni. 9. Senātum Rōmānum accūsāmus. 10. Dē multis
 rēbus dubitant. 11. Caesar legiōnēs in aciē collocat et
 oppidum oppugnat. 12. Dē fidē multārum legiōnum dubi-
 tāmus. 13. Dē reliquis rēbus dubitātis.

CHAPTER IX.

ADJECTIVES (Continued).

NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

61. Here belong : —

<i>alius, another ;</i> <i>ullus, any ;</i> <i>uter, which ? (of two) ;</i> <i>solus, alone ;</i> <i>unus, one, alone.</i>	<i>alter, the other ;</i> <i>nullus, none, no ;</i> <i>neuter, neither ;</i> <i>totus, whole ;</i>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

They are declined as follows : —

SINGULAR.

<i>alius, another.</i>			<i>alter, the other.</i>		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>alter</i>	<i>altera</i>	<i>alterum</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i> ¹	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>aliſ</i>	<i>aliſ</i>	<i>aliſ</i>	<i>alteri</i>	<i>alteri</i>	<i>alteri</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>aliſ</i>	<i>aliſ</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>alteram</i>	<i>alterum</i>
<i>Voc.</i> —	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i> <i>aliſ</i>	<i>aliſ</i>	<i>aliſ</i>	<i>alterſ</i>	<i>alterſ</i>	<i>alterſ</i>

<i>uter, which ?</i>			<i>totus, whole.</i>		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>uter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>totus</i>	<i>tota</i>	<i>totum</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>totius</i>	<i>totius</i>	<i>totius</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>toti</i>	<i>toti</i>	<i>toti</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>utrum</i>	<i>utram</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>totum</i>	<i>totam</i>	<i>totum</i>
<i>Voc.</i> —	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i> <i>utrſ</i>	<i>utrſ</i>	<i>utrſ</i>	<i>totſ</i>	<i>totſ</i>	<i>totſ</i>

1. All these words lack the Vocative.
2. The Plural is regular, and is declined like *bonus*.

¹ This is regularly used, instead of *alius*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

62. These fall into three classes : —

1. Adjectives of three terminations in the Nominative Singular, — one for each gender.

2. Adjectives of two terminations.

3. Adjectives of one termination.

a. With the exception of Comparatives, and a few other words mentioned below (see § 68. 1), all Adjectives of the Third Declension follow the inflection of *i*-stems; i.e. they have the Ablative Singular in *-i*, the Genitive Plural in *-ium*, the Accusative Plural in *-is* (as well as *-es*) in the Masculine and Feminine, and the Nominative and Accusative Plural in *-ia* in the Neuter.

63. Adjectives of Three Terminations.

These are declined as follows : —

Ācer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> Ācer	Ācris	Ācre
<i>Gen.</i> Ācris	Ācris	Ācris
<i>Dat.</i> Ācrī	Ācrī	Ācrī
<i>Acc.</i> ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i> ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Abl.</i> ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i> ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i> ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i> ācrēs, -is	ācrēs, -is	ācria
<i>Voc.</i> ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i> ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

1. *Celer, celeris, celere, swift*, retains the *e* before *r*, but lacks the Genitive Plural.

64.

VOCABULARY.

ager, agrī, m., <i>field.</i>	dōnō, <i>I present.</i>
celeris, ere, <i>swift.</i>	equester, tris, tre, <i>equestrian.</i>
cohors, rtia, f., <i>cohort.</i>	princeps, cipis, m., <i>chief.</i>
collis, is, m., <i>hill.</i>	sine <i>without</i> , prep. with abl.
conjurō, <i>I conspire.</i>	terra, ae, f., <i>land.</i>
dēlectō, <i>I delight.</i>	

EXERCISES.

65. 1. Alia terra, alterius terrae. 2. Aliud periculum, aliorum periculorum. 3. Tōti cohorti, tōtius collis. 4. Nulli agri, nullius agri. 5. Alii legioni, aliae legiones. 6. Sine illa spē, nullius cohortis, nulli colli. 7. Proelia equestria, proeliis equestribus, proeliorum equestrium. 8. Unum proelium, aliud proelium, alii proelio, alteri proelio. 9. Victoriae celeris, victorias celeres, victoriis celeribus, victoria celeri.
66. 1. Principes tōtius Galliae conjurant. 2. De aliis rebus dubitamus. 3. Sine illo timore alterum oppidum oppugnant. 4. Alio proelio dimicat. 5. Nullos milites alterius cohortis laudamus. 6. Unam legionem in dextro cornu collocat. 7. Collem aliis cohortibus occupat. 8. Germanis solis agros donat. 9. Equestri proelio dimicat. 10. Spes celeris victoriae legiones dēlectat. 11. Alios milites in acie collocas. 12. Senatus de fide unius ducis dubitat. 13. Equites Romani agros Belgarum et multarum aliarum civitatum vexant.

CHAPTER X.

ADJECTIVES (Continued).

67. Adjectives of Two Terminations.

Fortis, strong.

SINGULAR.		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	fortis	forte
Gen.	fortis	fortis
Dat.	forti	forti
Acc.	fortem	forte
Voc.	fortis	forte
Abl.	forti	forti
PLURAL.		
Nom.	fortes	fortia
Gen.	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortes, -is	fortia
Voc.	fortes	fortia
Abl.	fortibus	fortibus

Fortior, stronger.

SINGULAR.		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	fortior	fortius
Gen.	fortioris	fortioris
Dat.	fortiori	fortiori
Acc.	fortiorem	fortius
Voc.	fortior	fortius
Abl.	fortiore, -i	fortiore, -i
PLURAL.		
Nom.	fortiores	fortiora
Gen.	fortiorum	fortiorum
Dat.	fortioribus	fortioribus
Acc.	fortiores, -is	fortiora
Voc.	fortiores	fortiora
Abl.	fortioribus	fortioribus

1. Fortior is the Comparative of fortis. All Comparatives are regularly declined in the same way.

68. Adjectives of One Termination.

Felix, happy.

SINGULAR.		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	felix	felix
Gen.	felicis	felicis
Dat.	felici	felici
Acc.	felicem	felix
Voc.	felix	felix
Abl.	felici	felici
PLURAL.		
Nom.	felicēs	felicia
Gen.	felicium	felicium
Dat.	felicibus	felicibus
Acc.	felicēs, -is	felicia
Voc.	felicēs	felicia
Abl.	felicibus	felicibus

Prudens, prudent.

SINGULAR.		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	prudens	prudens
Gen.	prudens	prudens
Dat.	prudens	prudens
Acc.	prudens	prudens
Voc.	prudens	prudens
Abl.	prudens	prudens
PLURAL.		
Nom.	prudens	prudens
Gen.	prudens	prudens
Dat.	prudens	prudens
Acc.	prudens, -is	prudens
Voc.	prudens	prudens
Abl.	prudens	prudens

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

29

Vetus, old.		
SINGULAR.		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	vetus	vetus
Gen.	veteris	veteris
Dat.	veteri	veteri
Acc.	veterem	vetus
Voc.	vetus	vetus
Abl.	veteris	veteris
PLURAL.		
Nom.	veteris	vetera
Gen.	veterum	veterum
Dat.	veteribus	veteribus
Acc.	veteris	vetera
Voc.	veteris	vetera
Abl.	veteribus	veteribus

Plus, more.	
SINGULAR.	
M. AND F.	NEUT.
_____	plūs
_____	plūria
_____	_____
_____	plūs
_____	_____
_____	plūre
PLURAL.	
plūrēs	plūra
plūrium	plūrium
plūribus	plūribus
plūrēs, -is	plūra
_____	_____
plūribus	plūribus

1. It will be observed that **vetus** is declined as a pure Consonant-Stem; i.e., Ablative Singular in **-e**, Genitive Plural in **-um**, Nominative Plural Neuter in **-a**, and Accusative Plural Masculine and Feminine in **-as** only. In the same way are declined **dives**, rich; **pauper**, poor.

2. **Plus**, in the Singular, is used only as a substantive.

69.

VOCABULARY.

aditus, is, m., approach.
adulescens, entis, m., young
communis, e, common.
complures, ra, gen. -um, very many.
concilium, i (ii), n., council.
deliberō, I deliberate, consult.
difficilis, e, difficult.
ferax, gen. **feracis**, fertile.
fides, ei, f., protection.

Haedui, ōrum, m. pl., *Haedui*, a Gallic tribe.
incolumis, e, unharmed, uninjured.
lēgatus, i, m., envoy.
navalis, e, naval.
nobilis, e, noble.
omnis, e, all, every.
tribūnus, i, m., tribune.
Veneti, ōrum, m. pl., *Vēneti*, a Gallic tribe.

EXERCISES.

70. 1. **Agrorum feracium**, in agris feracibus. 2. **Omnibus aditibus**, omnis aditus. 3. **Nobilis adulescentis**,

nōbīllum adūlēscētium. 4. Proelia nāvālia, proeliis nāvālibus. 5. Concilia commūnia, conciliis commūnibus. 6. In omnibus proeliis, omnium proeliōrum, omnis lēgātōs. 7. Terrae ferācēs, terrarum ferācium, complūrēs lēgātī Rōmānī. 8. Omnis agrōs Haeduōrum, in omnibus adūlēscētibus, complūrium victōriarum. 9. Lēgātōrum nōbīllum, omnibus tribūnis legiōnis.

71. 1. Milites Rōmānī sunt incolumēs. 2. Cum omnibus cōpīs oppidum oppugnat. 3. Helvētī agrōs ferācēs Haeduōrum vexant. 4. Tribūnōs omniū legiōnum vocat. 5. Complūrēs lēgātī fidem Caesaris implōrant. 6. Belgae in conciliō commūni dē bellō dēliberant. 7. Nōbilēs adūlēscētēs accūsāt. 8. Rōmānī Venetōs proeliō nāvālī superant. 9. Omnēs aditūs sunt difficilēs. 10. Adūlēscēs nōbilis est incolumis. 11. Nullus vir fortis perīcula commūnia vitat. 12. Lēgātī Haeduōrum sunt nōbilēs adūlēscētēs. 13. Omnia oppida Rōmānōrum sunt incolumia.

CHAPTER XI.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

72. 1. There are three degrees of Comparison, — the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

2. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding *-ior* (Neut. *-ius*), and the Superlative by adding *-issimus* (*-a, -um*), to the Stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel: —

<i>altus, high,</i>	<i>altior, higher.</i>	<i>altissimus,</i> { <i>highest,</i>
<i>fortis, brave,</i>	<i>fortior,</i>	<i>fortissimus.</i> { <i>very high.</i>
<i>felix, fortunate,</i>	<i>felicior,</i>	<i>felicissimus.</i>

3. Adjectives in *-er* form the Superlative by appending *-rimus* to the Nominative of the Positive. The Comparative is regular. Thus: —

<i>pulcher, beautiful,</i>	<i>pulchrior,</i>	<i>pulcherrimus.</i>
<i>celer, swift,</i>	<i>celerior,</i>	<i>celerrimus.</i>

4. Five adjectives in *-ilis* form the Superlative by adding *-limus* to the Stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel. The Comparative is regular. Thus: —

<i>facilis, easy.</i>	<i>facilior,</i>	<i>facillimus.</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult,</i>	<i>difficilior,</i>	<i>difficillimus.</i>
<i>similis, like,</i>	<i>similior,</i>	<i>simillimus.</i>
<i>dissimilis, unlike,</i>	<i>dissimilior,</i>	<i>dissimillimus.</i>
<i>humilis, low.</i>	<i>humilior,</i>	<i>humillimus.</i>

73. Irregular Comparison.

Several Adjectives vary the Stem in Comparison; viz., —

<i>bonus, good,</i>	<i>mellior, optimus.</i>	<i>magnus, large, major, maximus.</i>
<i>malus, bad,</i>	<i>pejor, pessimus.</i>	<i>multus, much, plus, plurimus.</i>
<i>parvus, small,</i>	<i>minor, minimus.</i>	

74. Defective Comparison.

1. Positive lacking entirely, —

_____	<i>prior, former,</i>	<i>primus, first.</i>
_____	<i>citerior, on this side,</i>	<i>citimus, near.</i>
_____	<i>ulterior, farther,</i>	<i>ultimus, farthest.</i>
_____	<i>propior, nearer,</i>	<i>proximus, nearest.</i>

2. Positive occurring only in special cases,—

posterus, <i>following</i> ,	posterior, <i>later</i> ,	{ postrēmus, <i>last</i> . postumus, <i>posthumous</i> .
exterus, <i>foreign</i> ,	exterior, <i>outer</i> ,	{ extrēmus, } extimus, } <i>outermost</i> .
inferus, <i>low</i> ,	inferior, <i>lower</i> ,	{ infimus, } imus. } <i>lowest</i> .
superus, <i>high</i> ,	superior, <i>higher</i> ,	{ suprēmus, <i>last</i> . summus, <i>highest</i> .

75.

VOCABULARY.

Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., *Allōbro-*
ges, a Gallic tribe.

altitūdō, inis, f., *depth, height*.

Avāricum, i, n., *Avaricum*, a
Gallic town.

fortis, e, *brave*.

Genava, ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of
the Allobroges.

quattuor, indecl., *four*.

quinque, indecl., *five*.

urbs, urbis, f., *city*.

vallis, is, f., *valley*.

EXERCISES.

76. 1. Majōra pericula, maximis periculis. 2. Minōribus
castris, minōrum castrōrum. 3. Maximī oppidī, maxima
oppida. 4. Urbēs pulchriōrēs, urbium pulcherrimarum.
5. Vallēs majōrēs, in vallibus majōribus. 6. Oppida proxima,
oppidōrum ultimōrum, urbēs pulcherrimae. 7. Majōrum
castrōrum, majōra castra, in vallibus pulcherrimis. 8. Ur-
bium proximārum, in urbibus proximis, legiōnēs optimae.
9. Legiōnum meliōrum, legiōnibus pejōribus.

77. 1. Belgae sunt fortissimi omnium Gallōrum. 2. Reli-
quae cohortēs minōra castra oppugnant. 3. Altitūdō flūminis
est minima. 4. In castris majōribus sunt quinque legiōnēs.
5. Maximās cōpiās parāmus. 6. Quattuor cohortēs in primā
aciē sunt. 7. Genava est extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum.
8. Militēs cum minōre periculō dimicant. 9. Avāricum est
pulcherrima urbs tōtius Galliae. 10. Aditūs sunt difficillimi.
11. Legiōnēs Rōmānae agrōs optimōs vāstant. 12. Militēs
unius cohortis in majōribus castris maximā virtūte dimicant.

CHAPTER XII.

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS. NUMERALS.

78. Adverbs are for the most part derived from adjectives, and depend upon them for their comparison.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive by changing *-i* of the Genitive Singular to *-e*; those derived from adjectives of the Third Declension, by changing *-is* of the Genitive Singular to *-iter*; as, —

<i>cārus</i> ,	<i>cārē</i> , <i>dearly</i> ;
<i>pulcher</i> ,	<i>pulchrē</i> , <i>beautifully</i> ;
<i>acer</i> ,	<i>acriter</i> , <i>fiercely</i> .

a. But Adjectives in *-us* apparently change *-is* of the Genitive to *-er* (instead of *-iter*) to form the Adverb; as, —

sapiēns, *sapienter*, *wisely*.

Audāx forms *audācter*; *sollers*, *sollertex*.

2. The Comparative of all Adverbs regularly consists of the Accusative Singular Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective; while the Superlative of the Adverb is found by changing the *-i* of the Genitive Singular of the Superlative of the Adjective to *-e*. Thus: —

(<i>cārus</i>)	<i>cārē</i> , <i>dearly</i> ,	<i>cārius</i> ,	<i>cārissimē</i> .
(<i>pulcher</i>)	<i>pulchrē</i> , <i>beautifully</i> ,	<i>pulchrius</i> ,	<i>pulcherrimē</i> .
(<i>acer</i>)	<i>acriter</i> , <i>fiercely</i> ,	<i>acrius</i> ,	<i>acerrimē</i> .
(<i>audāx</i>)	<i>audācter</i> , <i>boldly</i> ,	<i>audācius</i> ,	<i>audācissimē</i> .

79. Adverbs Peculiar in Comparison and Formation.

<i>benē</i> , <i>well</i> ,	<i>melius</i> ,	<i>optimē</i> .
<i>malē</i> , <i>ill</i> ,	<i>pejus</i> ,	<i>pessimē</i> .
<i>magnopere</i> , <i>greatly</i> ,	<i>magis</i> ,	<i>maximē</i> .
<i>multum</i> , <i>much</i> ,	<i>plūs</i> ,	<i>plūrimum</i> .
<i>nōn multum</i> ,	} <i>little</i> ,	<i>minimē</i> .
<i>parum</i> ,		
<i>saepe</i> , <i>often</i> ,	<i>saepius</i> ,	<i>saeptissimē</i> .
<i>prope</i> , <i>near</i> ,	<i>propius</i> ,	<i>proximē</i> .

80.

Numerals.

1. For the declension of *unus*, *one*, see p. 25.
2. *Duo*, *two*, and *trēs*, *three*, are declined as follows :—

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>trēs (tris)</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

3. The units from four to ten, and all the tens from ten to one hundred are indeclinable. Hundreds are declined like the plural of *homin.*

4. *Mille*, *thousand*, is regularly an adjective in the Singular, and indeclinable. In the Plural it is a substantive (followed by the Genitive of the objects enumerated), and is declined, —

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>milia</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>milia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>milium</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>milia</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>milibus</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>milibus</i>

81.

VOCABULARY.

<i>acriter</i> , sharply, fiercely (from <i>acer</i>).	<i>instō</i> , I press on.
<i>audacter</i> , courageously (from <i>audax</i>).	<i>magis</i> , more, rather; comp. of <i>magnopere</i> .
<i>cōgitō</i> , I think.	<i>maximē</i> , especially; sup. of <i>magnopere</i> .
<i>dēfēnsiō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f., defence.	<i>perturbō</i> , I agitate.
<i>dū</i> , adv., a long time.	<i>pugnō</i> , I fight.
<i>facile</i> , easily (from <i>facilis</i>).	<i>quam</i> , than.
<i>fortiter</i> , bravely (from <i>fortis</i>).	<i>tardō</i> , I retard, check.
<i>fuga</i> , ae, f., flight.	<i>trecenti</i> , ae, a, three hundred.
<i>impetus</i> , ūs, m., onset, attack.	

EXERCISES.

82. 1. Trecentōrum equitum. 2. Cum tribus filiabus.
3. Tria oppida, in tribus oppidis. 4. Duo milia equitum,
mille equitēs. 5. In duabus terris. 6. In tribus legioni-
bus, duo filii, duos filios, tres principes. 7. Melius, magis,
minus fortiter, optimē. 8. Fortius, maximē, propius, sae-
pissimē. 9. Nōmina duorum principum, tribus filiabus.

83. 1. Hostēs diu¹ et acriter pugnant. 2. Milites magis
de fugā quam de defēsiōne castrōrum cōgitant. 3. Jūmenta
Gallōs maximē delectant. 4. Timor mentēs militum magno-
pere perturbat. 5. Duae legiōnēs audācius instant. 6. Tre-
centi Germāni sunt in castris. 7. Milites acerrimē et for-
tissimē pugnant. 8. Caesar impetum hostium facile tardat.
9. Tria milia equitum in proeliō pugnant. 10. Equitēs minus
audācter instant. 11. Unus Rōmānus trēs adulescentēs Ger-
mānos superat. 12. Mille equitēs Rōmāni cum tribus mili-
bus Gallōrum dimicant.

REVIEW.

1. Sine ullō periculō alterum oppidum Belgārum oppugnā-
mus. 2. Duas legiōnēs in dextrō cornū collocā. 3. Quat-
tuor lēgati Germānōrum auxilium Caesaris, ducis Rōmāni,
implōrant. 4. In oppidō majore sunt trēs legiōnēs.
5. Duos collēs altissimōs occupāmus. 6. Acerrimē et for-
tissimē dimicātis. 7. Legiōnēs castra minōra oppugnant.
8. Collem quinque aliis legiōnibus occupat. 9. Virtūtem
ducum Rōmānōrum et militum laudāmus. 10. Dux maxi-
mās cōpiās parat. 11. Virtūtem tōtius aciēi laudāmus.
12. Adulescēns nōbilis victōriam cōpiarum Rōmānarum senātui
nūntiat. 13. Duas legiōnēs in alterō cornū collocat.

¹ The adverb usually stands immediately before the word which it modifies.

CHAPTER XIII.

PRONOUNS

84. A Pronoun is a word that indicates something without naming it.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

85. These correspond to the English *I, you, he, she, it, etc.*, and are declined as follows: —

	<i>First Person.</i>	<i>Second Person.</i>	<i>Third Person.</i>
	SINGULAR.		
<i>Nom.</i>	ego, <i>I</i>	tū, <i>thou</i>	is, <i>he</i> ; ea, <i>she</i> ; id, <i>it</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	mei	tui	(For Declension, see § 84.)
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	mihi	
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	mē	
<i>Voc.</i>	—	ei	
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	

	PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	nōs, <i>we</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	{ nostrum { nostri	{ vestrum { vestri
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>Voc.</i>	—	vōs
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs

II. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

86. These refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand; like *myself, yourself*, in '*I see myself.*' *etc.* They are declined as follows: —

Reflexive, Possessive, Demonstrative Pronouns. 87

First Person. Supplied by oblique cases of ego.		Second Person. Supplied by oblique cases of tū.	Third Person.
Gen.	mei, of myself	tui, of thyself	sui
Dat.	mihi, to myself	tibi, to thyself	sibi
Acc.	mē, myself	tē, thyself	eū or eā
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	mē, with myself, etc.	tē, with thyself, etc.	eū or eā

1. The Reflexive of the Third Person serves for all genders and for both numbers. Thus *sui* may mean, of himself, herself, itself, or of themselves; and so with the other cases of *sui*.

III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

87. These are strictly adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are inflected as such. They are:—

First Person.	Second Person.
meus, -a, -um, my;	tuus, -a, -um, thy;
noster, nostra, nostrum, our;	vester, vestra, vestrum, your;
Third Person.	
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.	

1. *Suus* is exclusively Reflexive; as,—

pater liberōs suōs amat, the father loves his children.

Otherwise, *his, her, its*, are regularly expressed by the Genitive Singular of *is*, viz. *eius*; and *their*, by the Genitive Plural, *eōrum, eārum*.

IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

88. These point out an object as here or there, or as previously mentioned. They are:—

hic, this; iste, ille, is, that; Idem, the same.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom. hic	haec	hōc	hi	hae	haec
Gen. huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat. huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
Acc. hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl. hōc	hāc	hōc	his	his	his

89.

VOCABULARY.

*ad, to,*¹ *towards*, prep. w. acc.
amicōs, in a friendly manner.
cārus, a, um, dear.
culpō, I blame.
Dumnorix, Igis, m., Dumnorix, a
chief of the Haedui.
gladius, I (II), m., sword.
grātus, a, um, pleasing, welcome.
imperātor, ōris, m., commander.
iūdicō, I judge, adjudge.

memoria, ae, f., memory, recollec-
tion.
officium, I (II), n., duty.
praestō, I perform.
probō, I approve.
quoque, also, always placed after
the word it modifies.
salūs, ūtis, f., safety.
verbum, I, n., word.

EXERCISES.

90. 1. *Mihi, nobis, nos.* 2. *Sui, sibi.* 3. *Tē, vobis,*
vestri. 4. *Tū, mei, vōs, tibi, vestrum, mē, sē.* 5. *Pater*
*meus,*² *pater noster, patrum nostrōrum.* 6. *Patris tui, patrēs*
vestri. 7. *Hūjus patris, hōrum patrum.* 8. *Gladius meus,*
imperātōri nostrō, officiōrum vestrōrum. 9. *Huic puerō, hōs*
virōs, hōrum castrōrum.

91. 1. *Ego officium meum*² *imperātōri praestō.* 2. *Caesar*
nōs ācritēr accūsāt. 3. *Tua nostrī memoria mihi est grāta.*
4. *Ad sē Dumnorīgēm vocat.* 5. *Caesar dē vōbis amicissimē*
iūdicat. 6. *Tū quoque verba mea probās.* 7. *Ego mē*
accūsō. 8. *Sē culpant.* 9. *Hic*³ *pater filiās suās vocat.*
10. *Vestra salūs, militēs, huic imperātōri cāra est.* 11. *Equi-*
tēs nostrī gladiis suis pignant. 12. *Hōs puerōs ad nōs*
vocāmus. 13. *In hōc proeliō equestri audācissimē pignant.*

¹ English *to* is rendered by *ad* in Latin, if there is an idea of *motion*; otherwise the Dative is used.

² The Possessive Pronouns, unless emphatic, are ordinarily placed after the noun which they limit.

³ A Demonstrative Pronoun, like an adjective, agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with the noun it limits.

CHAPTER XIV.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (Continued).—THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

93.

Iste, that, that of yours.

SINGULAR.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom. iste	ista	istud
Gen. istius	istius	istius
Dat. isti	isti	isti
Acc. istum	istam	istud
Abl. isto	ista	isto
PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom. isti	istae	ista
Gen. istorum	istorum	istorum
Dat. istis	istis	istis
Acc. istos	istas	ista
Abl. istis	istis	istis

93.

Ille, that, that one, he, is declined like iste.

94.

Is, he, that, this.

SINGULAR.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom. is	ea	id
Gen. ejus	eius	eius
Dat. ei	ei	ei
Acc. eum	eam	id
Abl. eo	ea	eo
PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom. ei or il	cae	ea
Gen. eorum	eorum	eorum
Dat. eis or ils	eis or ils	eis or ils
Acc. eos	eas	ea
Abl. eis or ils	eis or ils	eis or ils

95.

Idem, the same.

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>

PLURAL.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	{ <i>eidem</i> <i>iidem</i> }	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eisdem</i>	<i>eisdem</i>	<i>eisdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eisdem</i>	<i>eisdem</i>	<i>eisdem</i>

The *Nom. Pl. Masc.* also has *Idem*, and the *Dat. Abl. Pl. Idem* or *iidem*.

V. The Intensive Pronoun.

96. The Intensive Pronoun in Latin is *ipse*. It corresponds to the English *myself*, etc., in '*I myself, he himself.*'

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>

PLURAL.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

97.

VOCABULARY.

bene, well.	opiniō, ōnis, f., opinion, expectation.
causa, ae, f., cause, condition.	porta, ae, f., gate.
exercitus, ūs, m., army.	servus, i, m., slave.
facultās, ātis, f., supply.	sex, indecl., six.
ignāvus, a, um, cowardly.	summus, highest, greatest; sup. of
labor, ōris, m., labor.	superus (§ 74, 2).

EXERCISES.

98. 1. Illius¹ opiniōnis, illae opiniōnēs. 2. Ejusdem exercitūs, in eōdem exercitū. 3. Eae causae, dē eis causis. 4. Eōrundem labōrum, eisdem labōribus. 5. Servi ipsius,² ipsōs servōs. 6. In istō exercitū, istius exercitūs, eidem exercitui. 7. Eōdem labōre, ejusdem opiniōnis, eārundem portārum. 8. Illis causis, in eādem causā, eadem castra.

99. 1. Isti militēs sunt ignāvi. 2. Officia illi praestāmus. 3. In illō exercitū sunt multi servi. 4. Ejus nōmen est Galba. 5. Dē eā causā bene jūdicat. 6. Sex cohortēs ejus legiōnis portās ipsās oppidi oppugnant. 7. Dē eisdem rēbus jūdicāmus. 8. In eādem causā sunt alii Galli. 9. Eidem equitēs illum laudant. 10. In eō oppidō est summa facultās omnium rērum. 11. Eam ad nōs vocō. 12. Patrem eōrum laudō. 13. Militēs nostri illum difficiliōrem aditum fortiter oppugnant. 14. Dux illius exercitūs est ignāvissimus.

¹ The Demonstrative Pronouns regularly precede the noun which they limit.

² The Intensive Pronoun stands sometimes before, sometimes after, the noun which it limits.

CHAPTER XV.

RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

VI. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

100. The Relative Pronoun is *qui*, *who*. It is declined: —

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quæ</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>quorum</i>	<i>quarum</i>	<i>quorum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quos</i>	<i>quas</i>	<i>quæ</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quò</i>	<i>quâ</i>	<i>quò</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

101. The Interrogative Pronouns are *quis*, *who?* (substantive) and *qui*, *what?* *what kind of?* (adjective).

1. *Quis*, *who?*

	SINGULAR.		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>	<p>These forms are rare. When they occur they follow the declension of the Relative Pronoun.</p>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quò</i>	<i>quò</i>	

2. *qui*, *what?* *what kind of?* is declined precisely like the Relative Pronoun; *viz.* *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, *etc.*

VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

102. These have the general force of *some one, any one*, as shown in the following list: —

SUBSTANTIVES.			ADJECTIVES.		
M. AND F.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
quis,	quid,	{ <i>any one, anything.</i>	qui,	quæ or quæ, quod,	<i>any.</i>
aliquis,	aliquid,	{ <i>some one, something.</i>	aliqui,	aliqua,	aliquid, <i>some.</i>
quisquam,	quidquam,	{ <i>any one, anything.</i>	No corresponding adjective.		
quispiam,	quidpiam,	{ <i>any one, anything.</i>	quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam, <i>any.</i>
quisque,	quidque,	<i>each.</i>	quisque,	quæque,	quodque, <i>each.</i>
quivis, quævis,	quidvis,	{ <i>any one, anything</i>	quivis,	quævis,	quodvis, { <i>any</i>
quilibet, quælibet,	quidlibet,	{ <i>you wish.</i>	quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet, { <i>you wish.</i>
quidam, quædam,	quiddam,	{ <i>a certain person or thing.</i>	quidam,	quædam,	quoddam, { <i>a certain.</i>

1. In the Indefinite Pronouns, only the pronominal part is declined. Thus: Genitive Singular *alicujus, cujuslibet, etc.*

2. Note that *aliqui* has *aliqua* in the Nominative Singular Feminine, also in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter. *Qui* has both *quæ* and *quæ* in these same cases.

3. *Quidam* forms Accusative Singular *quendam, quandam*; Genitive Plural *quorundam, quarundam*; the *n* being assimilated to *n* before *d*.

4. There are two Indefinite Relatives, — *quiscumque* and *quisquis*, *whoever*. *Quiscumque* declines only the first part; *quisquis* declines both, but has only *quisquis, quidquid, quodquod* in common use.

103.

Principle of Syntax.

Agreement of Relative Pronouns. The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands; as, —

mulier quam vidēbāmus, the woman whom we saw;
bona quæ dēsiderāmus, the blessings which we miss.

104.

VOCABULARY.

armō, *I arm.*dubitō, *I hesitate, waver.*dux, ducia, c., *leader.*errō, *I err, am mistaken.*fugō, *I put to flight.*hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter-quarters.*homō, minia, c., *man, human being.*praeda, ae, f., *booty.*sī, *if.*spērō, *I hope, hope for; governs the acc.*

EXERCISES.

105. 1. Miles quidam, militibus quibusdam. 2. Quis¹ homō? Quod oppidum? 3. Cuique civitatī, cūjusque servi. 4. Praeda aliqua, in proeliō aliquō. 5. Homō quilibet, hominis cūjuslibet. 6. Quamque cohortem. Cūjus auctoritās? In quā civitate? 7. Oppidōrum quōrundam, in oppidis quibusdam, virō cuidam. 8. Homini cuius, hominibus quibusvis. 9. Cuiquam, quidquam, cūjusquam.

106. 1. Cohortēs quāsdam in hibernis collocat. 2. Si quisquam salutem spērat, errat. 3. Dux militibus, qui oppidum oppugnant, praedam dōnat. 4. Legiōnēs laudat quae hostis fugant. 5. Servōs armat qui in castris sunt. 6. Collem quendam occupat. 7. Quis hunc hominem accūsat? 8. Caesar principēs cūjusque civitātis ad sē vocat. 9. Quod oppidum oppugnātis? 10. Quae castra hī militēs oppugnant? 11. Quis vestrum salutem urbis spērat? 12. Hic imperātor legiōnēs culpat quae pericula vitant.

¹ Quis is sometimes used as an interrogative adjective. It has the force of *what?* whereas qui means rather *what kind of?*

CHAPTER XVI.

CONJUGATION.

107. The inflection of Verbs is called Conjugation.

108. Verbs have Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person:

1. Two Voices, — Active and Passive.
2. Three Moods, — Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.
3. Six Tenses, — Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

But the Subjunctive lacks the Future and Future Perfect; while the Imperative employs only the Present and Future.

4. Two Numbers, — Singular and Plural.
5. Three Persons, — First, Second, and Third.

109. These make up the so-called *Finite Verb*. Besides this, we have the following Noun and Adjective Forms: —

1. Noun Forms, — Infinitive, Gerund, and Supine.
2. Adjective Forms, — Participles (including the Gerundive).

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

110. There are in Latin four regular Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the first vowel of the termination of the Present Infinitive Active, as follows: —

CONJUGATION.	INFINITIVE TERMINATION.	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL.
I.	-ire	ā
II.	-ire	ē
III.	-ire	ī
IV.	-ire	i

111. PRINCIPAL PARTS. The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and the Perfect Participle¹ constitute the **Principal Parts** of a Latin verb, — so called because they contain the different stems, from which the full conjugation of the verb may be derived.

¹ Where the Perfect Participle is not in use, the Future Active Participle, if it occurs, is given as one of the Principal Parts.

INDICATIVE OF *sum*.

112. The irregular verb *sum* is so important for the conjugation of all other verbs that its inflection is given at the outset.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRÆS. IND.
sum

PRÆS. INF.
esse

PRÆS. IND.
ful

FUT. PARTIC.¹
futūrus

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

*sum, I am,
es, thou art,
est, he is;*

PLURAL.

*sumus, we are,
estis, you are,
sunt, they are.*

IMPERFECT.

*eram, I was,
erās, thou wast,
erat, he was;*

*erāmus, we were,
erātis, you were,
erant, they were.*

FUTURE.

*erō, I shall be,
eris, thou wilt be,
erit, he will be;*

*erimus, we shall be,
eritis, you will be,
erunt, they will be.*

PERFECT.

*ful, I have been, I was,²
fuisti, thou hast been, thou wast,
fuit, he has been, he was;*

*fuimus, we have been, we were,
fuistis, you have been, you were,
fuerunt, } they have been, they were.
fuerē, }*

PLUPERFECT.

*fueram, I had been,
fueraś, thou hadst been,
fuerat, he had been;*

*fuerāmus, we had been,
fuerātis, you had been,
fuerant, they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

*fuerō, I shall have been,
fueris, thou wilt have been,
fuerit, he will have been;*

*fuerimus, we shall have been,
fueritis, you will have been,
fuerint, they will have been.*

¹ The Perfect Participle is wanting in *sum*.

² These two meanings are designated respectively as the Present Perfect (*I have been*) and the Historical Perfect (*I was*).

113

VOCABULARY.

ante, before, in front of, prep. with acc.

Bibulus, I, m., *Bibulus* (a man's name).

firmus, a, um, firm, strong.

fossa, ae, f., ditch, trench.

ibi, adv., there, in that place.

inopia, ae, f., lack, need.

nōdum, not yet.

quondam, formerly.

septem, indecl., seven.

ubi, where, rel. and interr. adv.

EXERCISES.

114. 1. *Erātis, fuerat, fuistis.* 2. *Estis, fuerimus, fuerant.*
3. *Eritis, erant, fuēre.* 4. *Fuisti, erimus, erās.* 5. *Fuerās,*
fueris, fueritis. 6. *Erō, erunt, fuerint.* 7. *Eris, fuerātis,*
erit. 8. *Sunt meliōrēs, es melior, fuistis optimi.* 9. *Erā-*
mus amici, sumus lēgātī. 10. *Agricola fuerat, agricolae*
sumus.

115. 1. *Fossa erat ante oppidum.* 2. *Hī lēgātī in castris*
Caesaris fuerant. 3. *Haec civitās quondam fuerat firmissima.*
4. *Hae septem legiōnēs in Italiā erant.* 5. *Quis fuit dux*
hōrum militum? 6. *Caesar et Bibulus cōsulēs fuērunt.*
7. *Magna erit inopia omnium rērum.* 8. *Ubi fuistis?* 9. *In*
oppidō Haeduōrum fuimus. 10. *Nōdum ibi fuerāmus.*
11. *Ubi pater noster fuit?* 12. *Vōs, militēs, qui omnia*
pericula vitātis, ignāvissimī estis. 13. *In illō oppidō Bel-*
gārum nōdum fuerātis.

CHAPTER XVII.

CONJUGATION (Continued).

SUBJUNCTIVE OF *esse*.¹

III.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

*sim, may I be,
sis, be thou, mayest thou be,
sit, let him be, may he be;*

PLURAL.

*simus, let us be, may we be,
sitis, be ye, may you be,
sint, let them be, may they be.*

IMPERFECT.

*essem, I should be,
essēs, thou wouldst be,
esset, he would be;*

*essēmus, we should be,
essētis, you would be,
essent, they would be.*

PERFECT.

*fuerim, I may have been,
fueris, thou mayest have been,
fuerit, he may have been;*

*fuerimus, we may have been,
fueritis, you may have been,
fuerint, they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT.

*fuissem, I should have been,
fuisēs, thou wouldst have been,
fuisset, he would have been;*

*fuissemus, we should have been,
fuisētis, you would have been,
fuisent, they would have been.*

Imperative.

*Pres. es, be thou,
Fut. estō, thou shalt be,
estō, he shall be;*

*esta, be ye,
estōte, ye shall be,
suntō, they shall be.*

Infinitive.

*Pres. esse, to be,
Perf. fuisse, to have been.*

Participle.

Fut. futūrus esse,² to be about to be. Fut. futūrus,³ about to be.

¹ The meanings of the different tenses of the Subjunctive are so many and so varied, particularly in subordinate clauses, that no attempt can be made to give them here. For fuller information the pupil is referred to the Syntax.

² For futūrus esse the form fore is often used.

³ Declined like bonus, -a, -um.

117.

VOCABULARY.

<i>amicitia</i> , ae, f., <i>friendship</i> .	<i>fēlix</i> , gen. <i>fēlicis</i> , <i>fortunate, happy</i> .
<i>beātus</i> , a, um, <i>happy</i> .	<i>inter</i> , <i>among, between</i> , prep. with
<i>brevis</i> , e, <i>short, brief</i> .	acc.
<i>civis</i> , <i>civis</i> , c., <i>citizen, fellow</i>	<i>lēx</i> , <i>lēgis</i> , f., <i>law</i> .
<i>citizen</i> .	<i>perpetuus</i> , a, um, <i>perpetual</i> .
<i>clēmēns</i> , gen. <i>entis</i> , <i>merciful</i> .	<i>puer</i> , <i>puerī</i> , m., <i>boy</i> .
<i>contentus</i> , a, um, <i>contented</i> .	<i>sub</i> , <i>under</i> , prep. with abl.

EXERCISES.

118. 1. Fuisse, futūrus esse. 2. Sit, sitis. 3. Fuisset, fuissēmus. 4. Es, estō, suntō. 5. Essēs, essētis, essēmus. 6. Simus, essent, esse, futūrus. 7. Contentus fuisset, sit fēlix, sint fēlicēs. 8. Este, esset, estōte. 9. Fuissētis beātī, fuisset beātus. 10. Essem, fuissēs, sis.

119. 1. Sint mei cīvēs incolumēs, sint beātī. 2. Fēlicēs simus. 3. Sub hōc imperātōre contentī fuissēmus. 4. Lēgēs brevēs suntō. 5. Es bonus imperātor. 6. Estō clēmēns. 7. Este fortēs militēs. 8. Hī puerī futūrī sunt adulescentēs. 9. Inter nōs sit amicitia perpetua. 10. Sine hīs laboribus militēs fortiōrēs fuissent. 11. In aliō oppidō fēlicior fuissēs.

CHAPTER XVIII.

FIRST (OR 2-) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Amō, I love.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
amō

Pres. Inf.
amāre

Pres. Ind.
amāvi

Pres. Pass. Partic.
amātus

190.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

amō, I love,
amās, you love,
amat, he loves;

PLURAL.

amāmus, we love,
amātis, you love,
amant, they love.

IMPERFECT.

amābam, I was loving, I loved,
amābās, you were loving, etc.,
amābat, he was loving, etc.;

amābāmus, we were loving, etc.,
amābātis, you were loving, etc.,
amābant, they were loving, etc.

FUTURE.

amābō, I shall love,
amābis, you will love,
amābit, he will love;

amābimus, we shall love,
amābitis, you will love,
amābunt, they will love.

PERFECT.

amāvī, I have loved, I loved,
amāvistī, you have loved, you
loved,
amāvit, he has loved, he loved,

amāvimus, we have loved, we loved,
amāvistis, you have loved, you
loved,
amāvērunt, -ēre, they have loved,
they loved.

PLUPERFECT.

amāveram, I had loved,
amāverās, you had loved,
amāverat, he had loved;

amāverāmus, we had loved,
amāverātis, you had loved,
amāverant, they had loved.

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō, I shall have loved.
amāveris, you will have loved,
amāverit, he will have loved;

amāverimus, we shall have loved,
amāveritis, you will have loved,
amāverint, they will have loved.

1. VERB STEMS. Observe that the Present, Imperfect, and Future are formed by adding the proper endings to one and the same stem, *am-*. This is called the **Present Stem**. Similarly the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect are formed from the stem *amāv-*. This is called the **Perfect Stem**.

121.

VOCABULARY.

<i>animus</i> , I, m., <i>mind</i> .	<i>jam</i> , adv., <i>already</i> .
<i>Ariovistus</i> , I, m., <i>Ariovistus</i> , king of the Germans.	<i>jugum</i> , I, n., <i>yoke</i> ; <i>ridge</i> (of mountains).
<i>classis</i> , is, f., <i>fleet</i> .	<i>litus</i> , oris, n., <i>shore</i> .
<i>cōnsilium</i> , I (if), n., <i>plan</i> .	<i>locus</i> , I, m., <i>place</i> ; pl. <i>loca</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , n.
<i>ex</i> , <i>ex</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>out of</i> , prep. with abl.; <i>ex</i> must be used before vowels or <i>h</i> .	<i>nāvis</i> , is, f., <i>ship</i> , <i>boat</i> .
<i>gens</i> , <i>gentis</i> , f., <i>tribe</i> .	<i>pars</i> , <i>partis</i> , f., <i>part</i> , <i>side</i> .
	<i>saepe</i> , adv., <i>often</i> .

EXERCISES.

122. 1. Laudābimus, laudāvistis. 2. Laudāverant, laudābat, laudābit. 3. Jūdicāvimus, jūdicāverimus, jūdicāverās. 4. Superābit, superābās. 5. Occupant, occupāverunt. 6. Laudāvit, laudābāmus, laudāverant. 7. Occupābitis, occupābātis, occupābis. 8. Collocāvistī, collocāverās, collocāveris. 9. Superābunt, superāverimus, superāverō.

123. 1. Ariovistus castra minōra oppugnābat. 2. Hunc locum ex duābus partibus oppugnāverunt. 3. Nāvēs et rēmigēs parābimus. 4. Omnia litora classibus occupāvit. 5. Timor animōs omnium occupāverat. 6. In summō jugō montis duās legiōnēs collocāvimus. 7. De bellō vōs ipsī jūdicābitis. 8. Hās gentēs, milites, jam saepe superāvistis. 9. Legiōnēs in proeliō dīmīcābant. 10. Quis hōc cōnsilium probābit? 11. Caesar plūrima jūmenta jam parāverat. 12. Hās quinque legiōnēs in eō locō collocābimus. 13. Pācem et amicitiam cum his civitatibus nōndum cōfirmāvimus.

A DANGEROUS WEDDING.

Sol¹ quondam uxorem ducere² volēbat.³ Rānae ad sidera clāmōrem tollunt.⁴ Juppiter causam querēlae quaerit.⁵ "Nunc," inquiunt,⁶ "ūnus sol omnēs lacūs exūrit;⁷ quid futurum est, si liberōs creābit?"

¹ In the passages of continuous narrative, the pupils will consult the General Vocabulary at the end of the book for words that have not occurred in previous lessons.

² uxorem dūcere: lit. to lead (i.e. take) a wife and so, to marry.

³ volēbat: wished.

⁴ tollunt: raise.

⁵ quaerit: asks.

⁶ inquiunt: they say.

⁷ exūrit: burns up, dries up.

CHAPTER XIX.

ACTIVE OF *amō* (Continued).

191

Subjunctive.

SINGULAR.

amem, may I love,
amēs, may you love,
amet, let him love, may he love;

amārem, I should love,
amārēs, you would love,
amāret, he would love;

amāverim, I may have loved,
amāveris, you may have loved,
amāverit, he may have loved;

amāvissē, I should have loved,
amāvissēs, you would have loved,
amāvissēt, he would have loved;

Pres. amē, love thou;
Fut. amātō, thou shalt love;
amātō, he shall love;

Infinitive.

Pres. amāre, to love.
Perf. amāvissē, to have loved.
Fut. amātūrus esse, to be about
to love.

Gerund.

Gen. amandī, of loving,
Dat. amandō, for loving,
Acc. amandum, loving,
Abl. amandō, by loving.

PRESENT.

PLURAL.

amēmus, let us love,
amētis, love, may you love,
ament, let them love, may they love.

IMPERFECT.

amārēmus, we should love,
amārētis, you would love,
amārent, they would love.

PERFECT.

amāverimus, we may have loved,
amāveritis, you may have loved,
amāverint, they may have loved.

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissēmus, we should have loved,
amāvissētis, you would have loved,
amāvissent, they would have loved.

Imperative.

amāte, love ye.
amātōte, ye shall love.
amantō, they shall love.

Participle.

Pres. amāns,¹ loving.
(Gen. *amantis*)
Fut. amātūrus, about to love.

Supine.

Acc. amātum, to love.
Abl. amātū, to love, be loved.

¹ For declension of *amāns*, see § 68, *prūdēs*.

1. **VERB STEMS.** Observe that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, Present Participle, and the Gerund are formed from the Present Stem. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, along with the Perfect Infinitive, are formed from the Perfect Stem. The Future Participle, Future Infinitive, and the Supine are formed from a third stem *amāt-*, known as the **Participial Stem**.

125.

VOCABULARY.

arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.

bellō,¹ *I make war, carry on war*.

cupīdus, a, um, *fond, eager*.

hōra, ae, f., *hour*.

intrā, *within*, prep. with acc.

medius, a, um, *middle, middle of*.

multitūdō, dinis, f., *multitude*.

nunc, *now*, temporal adv.

patria, ae, f., *country, fatherland*.

pedes, itis, m., *foot-soldier*; in pl., *infantry*.

plānitēs, ōi, f., *plain*.

temptō, 1, *I attempt, make trial of*.

vadum, I, n., *ford*.

EXERCISES.

126. 1. *Parā, parantō.* 2. *Parāvisse, parandī, parandō.*
3. *Bellāre, bellātūrus esse.* 4. *Temptēmus, temptāvissēmus.*
5. *Laudātō, laudāvisse, laudāvisset.* 6. *Laudātūrus, laudāns, laudent.* 7. *Laudandō, laudāret, laudā.* 8. *Dimicandī, dimicāvissent, dimicent.* 9. *Dimicāte, dimicāns, dimicāvisse.*

127. 1. *Patriam amēmus!* 2. *Hōc oppidum sine ullō periculō oppugnāvissēmus.* 3. *Arma, militēs, parāte!*
4. *Caesar vadum hūjus flūminis temptāre parat.* 5. *In mediā plānitē nunc dimicātūrī sumus.* 6. *Helvētī erant cupidī bellandī.* 7. *Intrā ūnam hōram classēs hostium superāvissēmus.* 8. *Cum magnā multitūdine peditum oppidum oppugnāre parābat.* 9. *Temptāte, militēs, illum collem occupāre.* 10. *Hae duae cohortēs, victōriam spērantēs, ācrius pugnābant.*

¹ Verbs of the First Conjugation are so regular that their Principal Parts are not given in full. They are indicated in the Vocabularies by the figure 1, and unless otherwise stated, their Principal Parts are regularly formed in -ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, precisely like *amō*.

CHAPTER XX.

FIRST (OR 2-) CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

Amor, I am loved.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. — amor	PRES. IND. amari	PRES. IMP. amari	PRES. IND. amatus sum
-------------------------	---------------------	---------------------	--------------------------

128.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

amor
amaris
amatur

PLURAL.

amamur
amamini
amantur

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

amabar
amabaris, or -re
amabatur

amabamur
amabamini
amabantur

FUTURE.

I shall be loved.

amabor
amaberis, or -re
amabitur

amabimur
amabimini
amabuntur

PERFECT.

I have been loved or I was loved.

amatus (-a, -um) sum
amatus es
amatus est

amati (-ae, -a) sumus
amati estis
amati sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.

amatus eram
amatus eras
amatus erat

amati eramus
amati eratis
amati erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been loved.

amatus ero
amatus eris
amatus erit

amati erimus
amati eritis
amati erunt

1. VERB STEMS. Observe that the Present, Imperfect, and Future belong to the Present Stem, the remaining tenses to the Participial Stem.

129.

VOCABULARY.

adventus, *fin, m., arrival.*
centum, *indecl., hundred.*
expectō, 1, *I expect, await.*
finitimus, *a, um, neighboring.*
frumentum, *1, n., grain.*

frustrā, *adv., in vain.*
funditor, *tōria, m., slinger.*
postridie, *adv., on the next day.*
postulō, 1, *I demand.*
vulnerō, 1, *I wound.*

EXERCISES.

130. 1. Laudabor, laudamini, laudabuntur. 2. Vocatus sum, vocati erant. 3. Vulnerantur, vulnerabimur. 4. Expectamur, expectabantur. 5. Culpati eramus, culpati erunt. 6. Expectabitur, expectata est, expectatae erant. 7. Laudati estis, laudaberis, laudamini. 8. Superati sumus, superantur, superabor. 9. Vulneratur, vulneratus sum, vulnerabimur.

131. 1. Reliqua pars exercitus frustrā expectabatur. 2. Hi fortes milites superati sunt. 3. Amicitia cum finitimis civitatibus confirmata¹ erat. 4. Centum funditores vulnerati sunt. 5. Frumentum postulatur. 6. Adventus ejus postridie nuntiatus est. 7. Naves et remigēs parabuntur. 8. Hae copiae armatae¹ sunt. 9. Haec oppida oppugnata¹ erant. 10. Haec victoria equitum nostrorum jam nuntiata erat. 11. Copiae et frumentum frustrā parabantur. 12. Omnes feraces agri Gallorum jam vastati erant. 13. Illae gentes finitimae superatae erunt.

OLD ROMAN VIRTUE.

Curius, homo singularis virtutis, ad focum sedebat,² cum legati Samnitium magnum pondus auri ei afferēbant.³ Sed Curius eos repudiavit. "Aurum," inquit,⁴ nolo habere;⁵ malo⁶ eis imperāre,⁷ qui habent.⁸

¹ Observe that in the compound tenses of the Passive the Participle agrees in Gender and Number with its subject, precisely like an adjective.

² sedebat: was sitting.

³ afferēbant: brought.

⁴ inquit: said he.

⁵ nolo habere: I do not wish to have.

⁶ malo: I prefer.

⁷ eis imperāre: to command those.

⁸ habent: have (it), viz. gold.

CHAPTER XXI.

PASSIVE OF *amō* (Continued).

133.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

May I be loved, let him be loved.

SINGULAR.

amē
amēris, or -re
amētur

PLURAL.

amēmur
amēmini
amentur

IMPERFECT.

I should be loved, he would be loved.

amērer
amērāris, or -re
amērētur

amērēmur
amērēmini
amērentur

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

amātus sim
amātus sis
amātus sit

amātī simus
amātī sitis
amātī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.

amātus essem
amātus essetis
amātus esset

amātī essemus
amātī essetis
amātī essent

Imperative.

Pres. amāre, be thou loved;
Fut. amātor, thou shalt be loved,
amātor, he shall be loved;

amāmini, be ye loved.
amantor, they shall be loved.

Infinitive.

Pres. amārī, to be loved.
Perf. amātus esse, to have been loved.
Fut. amātum irī, to be about to be loved.

Participle.

Perf. amātus, loved, having been loved.
Gerundive amandus, to be loved, deserving to be loved.

1. **VERB STEMS.** Observe that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, and the Gerundive belong to the Present Stem, the remaining forms to the Participial Stem. The Perfect Stem is not represented in the Passive.

133.

VOCABULARY.

castellum, *l. n.*, fort.

convoco, *l.*, I call together.

diligentia, *ae, f.*, diligence.

equus, *l. m.*, horse.

excito, *l.*, I stir up, rouse.

exercitus, *tis, m.*, army.

existimo, *l.*, I think, consider.

exitium, *l. (il), n.*, destruction.

expugno, *l.*, I take by storm.

non, not.

statim, at once, immediately.

templum, *l. n.*, temple.

vix, scarcely, with difficulty.

EXERCISES.

134. 1. Laudetur, laudemur, culpentur. 2. Laudatus esset, laudati essemus. 3. Excitari, excitatus esse, superandus. 4. Convocatus, culpatus. 5. Superati essemus, culpati essent. 6. Parari, parandus. 7. Collis occupetur, collis occupatus esset. 8. Vocatus essem, vocati essetis, vocata esset. 9. Vocentur, vocatus, vocatus esse. 10. Existimari, existimandus, existimetur.

135. 1. Arma et equi statim parentur. 2. Magnae classis summa diligentia parandae sunt. 3. Hi hostes non una legione superati essent. 4. Sine nobis hoc castellum vix expugnatum esset. 5. Senatus in hoc templum convocetur. 6. Sine te hae magnae copiae non paratae essent. 7. Diligentia militum nostrorum laudetur. 8. Hi milites vix laudati essent. 9. Sine auxilio nostro facile superati essetis. 10. Omnes portae sunt oppugnandae. 11. Maximus numerus navium statim paretur. 12. Hae legiones in eo loco collocandae sunt. 13. Exitium huius exercitus vitandum est.

REVIEW.

1. Maximi exercitus summa diligentia parati sunt.
2. Haec castella hostium jam expugnata erant.
3. Haec oppida statim oppugnabuntur.
4. Adventus legatorum nuntiabitur.
5. Timor animos peditum ignavorum occupaverat.
6. Haec gentes, milites, jam saepe superatae sunt.
7. Cohortes nostrae dimicabunt.
8. Quis fuit dux harum copiarum?
9. Cuius principes cuiusque civitatis ad se vocavit.
10. Haec nobis delectant.
11. Adventum tuum expectabo.
12. Arma et frumentum parabantur.
13. Amici nostri sunt vocandi.

CHAPTER XXII.

SECOND (OR 3-) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Moneō, I advise.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND. moneō	PRES. INF. monēre	PRES. IND. monui	PRES. PASS. PARTIC. monitus
---------------------	----------------------	---------------------	--------------------------------

136.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE. *I advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

IMPERFECT. *I was advising, or I advised.*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbas	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

FUTURE. *I shall advise.*

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

PERFECT. *I have advised, or I advised.*

monui	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuerunt, or -ēre

PLUPERFECT. *I had advised.*

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have advised.*

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

137.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT. *May I advise, let him advise.*

SINGULAR.

monēam

monēās

monēat

PLURAL.

monēamus

monēātis

monēant

IMPERFECT. *I should advise, he would advise.*

monērem

monērēs

monēret

monērēmus

monērētis

monērent

PERFECT. *I may have advised.*

monuerim

monueris

monuerit

monuerimus

monueritis

monuerint

PLUPERFECT. *I should have advised, he would have advised.*

monuissē

monuissēs

monuisset

monuissēmus

monuissetis

monuissent

Imperative.

Pres. monē, advise thou;

Fut. monētō, thou shalt advise,
monētō, he shall advise;

monēte, advise ye.

monētōte, ye shall advise.
monentō, they shall advise.

Infinitive.

Pres. monēre, to advise.

Perf. monuisse, to have advised.

Fut. monitūrus esse, to be about
to advise.

Participle.

Pres. monēs, advising.

(Gen. monentis.)

Fut. monitūrus, about to advise.

Gerund.

Gen. monendī, of advising,

Dat. monendō, for advising,

Acc. monendum, advising,

Abl. monendō, by advising.

Supine.

Acc. monitum, to advise,

Abl. monitū, to advise, be advised.

1. VERB STEMS. The Present, Perfect, and Participial Stems include the same moods and tenses in the Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations as in the First.

138.

VOCABULARY.

angustus, *a, um, narrow.*dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, *I owe; with an infinitive, I ought.*deus, *I, m., god.*equitatus, *us, m., cavalry.*finis, *is, m., end, boundary; in pl., territory.*fortiter, *bravely.*habeō, ēre, uī, itus, *I have, possess.*maneo, ēre, mānē, mānērus,¹
*I remain.*militaris, *e, military.*moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *I move.*prohibeo, ēre, uī, itus, *I keep off, keep away (tr.).*signum, *I, n., sign, standard.*sustineō, ēre, sustinui, *I withstand.*timeō, ēre, uī, *I fear.*video, ēre, vidi, visus, *I see.*

EXERCISES.

139. 1. Habebimus, habuimus, habeamus. 2. Sustin-
istis, sustinuerat. 3. Timebat, timebit, timeant. 4. Vidit,
viderat. 5. Mansisti, manserās, manseris. 6. Mansit,
manemus, mansisse. 7. Prohibuit, prohibuistis, prohibebit,
prohibeamus. 8. Habē, habitūrus, habeat. 9. Vidisti,
viderāmus, vidimus, viderunt.

140. 1. Hae civitatēs in amicitia Haeduōrum māserant.
2. Helvēti finēs angustōs habebant. 3. Hostēs signa mili-
taria jam viderant. 4. Impetum equitātis nostri fortiter
sustinuerunt. 5. Helvēti ex eō locō castra movent. 6. Quis
eōs timebit? 7. Hostēs prohibere debemus. 8. Dei hostēs
prohibeant! 9. Hostēs prohibete! 10. Magnum numerum
equitum et peditum habebimus. 11. In hōc oppidō manēbi-
mus. 12. Quis locum videt quem hostēs occupāverunt?
13. Eōdem amicos habemus et habuimus.

¹ See p. 45, footnote.

CHAPTER XXIII.

SECOND (OR 2-) CONJUGATION. -- PASSIVE VOICE.

Moneor, I am advised.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.—	PRES. IND. moneor	PASS. IND. moneri	PRES. IND. monitus sum
-------------------	----------------------	----------------------	---------------------------

141.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.

moneor
moneris
monetur

PLURAL.

monemur
monemini
monentur

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

monerbar
monerbaris, or -re
monerbatur

moneremur
moneremini
monerentur

FUTURE.

I shall be advised.

monerbor
monerboris, or -re
monerbitur

monerimur
monerimini
moneruntur

PERFECT.

I have been advised, I was advised.

monitus sum
monitus es
monitus est

moniti sumus
moniti estis
moniti sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

monitus eram
monitus eras
monitus erat

moniti eramus
moniti eratis
moniti erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been advised.

monitus erō
monitus eris
monitus erit

moniti erimus
moniti eritis
moniti erunt

142.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

SINGULAR.

monēar
monēāris, or -re
monēātur

FLURAL.

monēāmur
monēāmini
monēantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be advised, he would be advised.

monērer
monērēris, or -re
monērētur

monērēmur
monērēmini
monērēntur

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

monitus sim
monitus sis
monitus sit

moniti simus
moniti sitis
moniti sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been advised, he would have been advised.

monitus essem
monitus esses
monitus esset

moniti essemus
moniti essetis
moniti essent

Imperative.

Pres. monēre, be thou advised; monēmini, be ye advised.
Fut. monētor, thou shalt be advised,
monētor, he shall be advised; monentor, they shall be advised.

Infinitive.

Participle.

Pres. monēri, to be advised.

Perf. monitus esse, to have been advised.

Fut. monitum iri, to be about to be advised.

Perf. monitus, advised.

Gerundive monendus, to be advised, deserving to be advised.

143.

VOCABULARY.

admodum, quite, very much.
 aequus, a, um, level.
 apertus, a, um, open. [crease.
 augeō, ēre, auxi, auctus, I in-
 crease.
 barbarus, a, um, barbarian; as
 noun, m., a barbarian.
 celeriter, quickly.
 complēō, ēre, ēvi, ētus, I fill up.
 continēō, ēre, ui, I confine.

imber, imbris, m., rainstorm.
 moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, I
 move; touch, affect.
 perterreō, ēre, ui, itus, I terrify.
 suspiciō, ōnis, f., suspicion.
 teneō, ēre, ui, I hold.
 vetus, gen. veteris, old.
 videor, ēri, visus sum (passive
 of videō), be seen; seem.

EXERCISES.

144. 1. Movētur, movēbantur. 2. Perterrentur, perterrē-
 bantur, perterriti erant. 3. Contineātur, continēbuntur.
 4. Vidēri, visus esse, videndus. 5. Augēri, auctus esse.
 6. Visus est, visae erant, visi sunt. 7. Timēre videntur,
 timēre vidēbātur, timēre visa est. 8. Prohibēbāmur, pro-
 hibiti sumus, prohibita erat. 9. Prohibeantur, prohibēri.

145. 1. Milites in castris imbris continēbantur. 2. Bar-
 bari admodum perterriti sunt. 3. Equites hostium in aequo
 loco visi sunt. 4. Memoria nostrae veteris amicitiae movēbar.
 5. Suspicionēs Gallorum augēbantur. 6. Agri nostri vastari
 non debent. 7. Equites nostri illud oppidum expugnāvisse
 videntur. 8. Fossae celeriter complēbuntur. 9. Loca
 aperta tenēbantur. 10. Timorēs nostri aucti sunt.

THE DEATH OF EPAMINONDAS.

Epaminōndās Lacedaemoniōs apud Mantinēam vicit,¹ sed
 ipse hastā vulnerātus est. Primum rogāvit num clipeus esset²
 salvus. Amici respondērunt, "Salvus est." Deinde rogāvit
 num hostēs fūsi essent.³ Ubi hōc audivit,⁴ jussit⁵ hastam ēvelli⁶
 quā trānsfixus⁷ erat, atque laetus in victoriā mortuus est.⁸

¹ vicit: conquered, was victorious over.

² esset: was.

³ fūsi essent: had been routed.

⁴ audivit: heard.

⁵ jussit: from jubeō.

⁶ ēvelli: to be pulled out.

⁷ trānsfixus erat: had been pierced.

⁸ mortuus est: he expired.

CHAPTER XXIV.

THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE

Regō, I rule.

PRES. IND. PRES. IMP. PERF. IND. PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
PRINCIPAL PARTS. — regō regere rēxī rēctus

146.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

I rule.

PLURAL.

regō

regimus

regis

regitis

regit

regunt

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling, or I ruled.

regēbam

regēbāmus

regēbās

regēbātis

regēbat

regēbant

FUTURE.

I shall rule.

regam

regēmus

regēs

regētis

reget

regent

PERFECT.

I have ruled, or I ruled.

rēxī

rēximus

rēxistī

rēxistis

rēxit

rēxērunt, or -ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rēxeram

rēxerāmus

rēxerās

rēxerātis

rēxerat

rēxerant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have ruled.

rēxerō

rēxerimus

rēxeris

rēxeritis

rēxerit

rēxerint

Active of regō.

67

147.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.

SINGULAR.

regam
regās
regat

PLURAL.

regāmus
regātis
regant

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem
regerēs
regeret

regerēmus
regerētis
regerent

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rēxerim
rēxerīs
rēxerit

rēxerimus
rēxeritis
rēxerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have ruled, he would have ruled.

rēxissē
rēxissēs
rēxisset

rēxissēmus
rēxissetis
rēxissent

Imperative.

Pres. regē, rule thou;

*Fut. regitō, thou shalt rule,
regitō, he shall rule;*

regite, rule ye.

regitōte, ye shall rule.

reguntō, they shall rule.

Infinitive.

Pres. regere, to rule.

Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled.

*Fut. rēctūrus esse, to be about
to rule.*

Participle.

Pres. regēs, ruling.

(Gen. regentis.)

Fut. rēctūrus, about to rule

Gerund.

Gen. regendī, of ruling.

Dat. regendō, for ruling.

Acc. regendū, ruling.

Abi. regendō, by ruling.

Supine.

Acc. rēctum, to rule,

Abi. rēctū, to rule, be ruled.

L. VAR. FORMS. See § 187, 1.

148.

VOCABULARY.

auxilia, ōrum, n., pl., auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.
 ceterior, ius, adj., nearer, hither.
 committō, ere, mīsi, missus, I bring together; with proelium, to join battle.
 cōstituō, ere, ūi, ūtus, I decide, determine.
 contendō, ere, tēdi, tentum,¹ I hurry, hasten.
 dēfendō, ere, tēdi, fēsus, I defend.
 gerō, ere, gessi, gestus, I carry on, perform; with bellum, to wage.
 hic, here, at this place.
 Hispānia, ae, f., Spain.

in, into; prep. with acc.
 in, ea, ia, prep. with abl. of place where.
 instruō, ere, ūxi, ūctus, I draw up, arrange.
 iter, itineris, n., journey, march.
 litterae, ōrum, f., a letter.
 mittō, ere, misi, missus, I send.
 pōnō, ere, posui, positus, I put, place, establish.
 praesidium, i (ū), n., garrison.
 prōvincia, ae, f., province.
 reducō, ere, dūxi, ductus, I lead back.
 relinquō, ere, reliqui, relictus, I leave, leave behind.

EXERCISES.

148. 1. Mittēbat, mittent. 2. Misit, miserātis, miserunt.
 3. Reliquisset, reliquisse, relinquēns. 4. Instrūxerat, instrūxerimus. 5. Posuimus, posuerat, pōnant. 6. Relinquēmus, reliquimus, reliquisset. 7. Dēfendat, dēfendere, dēfendite. 8. Dēfendunt, dēfendent, dēfēdērunt. 9. Misisti, mittat.

149. 1. Litterās in Hispāniam ceteriōrem² misit. 2. In hanc prōvinciam magnis itineribus contendēbat. 3. Illās prōvinciās audācter dēfendite. 4. Galba legiōnēs in castra reduxerat. 5. Caesar aciem in mediō colle instrūxit. 6. Bellum gerere cōstituimus. 7. Proelium committāmus. 8. Partem auxiliōrum ibi reliquerat. 9. Hic praesidium posuērunt. 10. Hās prōvinciās fortiter dēfendēmus. 11. Quis hōs legātōs ad senātum misit? 12. Cōpiās in vicum proximum statim reducēmus. 13. Amicōs suos relinquere cōstituit. 14. Cum multis gentibus prōvinciae ceteriōris bellum gerētis.

¹ In the case of intransitive verbs, the Perfect Passive Participle is given in the neuter form.

² That is, Spain north of the Ebro.

CHAPTER XXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE

Regor, I am ruled.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.— <i>regor</i>	PRES. IND. PRES. IMP. <i>regor</i> <i>regi</i>	PRES. IND. <i>rēctus sum</i>
--------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------

151.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. <i>regor</i> <i>regis</i> <i>regitur</i>	<i>I am ruled.</i>	PLURAL. <i>regimur</i> <i>regimini</i> <i>reguntur</i>
<i>regēbar</i> <i>regēbāris, or -re</i> <i>regēbātur</i>	IMPERFECT. <i>I was ruled.</i>	<i>regēbāmur</i> <i>regēbāmini</i> <i>regēbantur</i>

FUTURE.

I shall be ruled.

<i>regar</i> <i>regēris, or -re</i> <i>regētur</i>		<i>regēmur</i> <i>regēmini</i> <i>regentur</i>
----------------------------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------------------

PERFECT.

I have been ruled, or I was ruled.

<i>rēctus sum</i> <i>rēctus es</i> <i>rēctus est</i>		<i>rēcti sumus</i> <i>rēcti estis</i> <i>rēcti sunt</i>
------------------------------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

<i>rēctus eram</i> <i>rēctus erās</i> <i>rēctus erat</i>		<i>rēcti erāmus</i> <i>rēcti erātis</i> <i>rēcti erant</i>
----------------------------------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been ruled.

<i>rēctus erō</i> <i>rēctus eris</i> <i>rēctus erit</i>		<i>rēcti erimus</i> <i>rēcti eritis</i> <i>rēcti erunt</i>
---------------------------------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------------------------------

152.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

May I be ruled, let him be ruled.

SINGULAR.

regar
regāris, or -re
regātur

PLURAL

regāmur
regāmini
regantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be ruled, he would be ruled.

regerer
regerāris, or -re
regerētur

regerāmur
regerāmini
regerentur

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rēctus sim
rēctus sis
rēctus sit

rēcti simus
rēcti sitis
rēcti sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.

rēctus essem
rēctus essets
rēctus esset

rēcti essemus
rēcti essetis
rēcti essent

Imperative.

*Pres. regere, be thou ruled ;**regimini, be ye ruled.*

*Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled,
regitor, he shall be ruled ;*

reguntor, they shall be ruled.

Infinitive.

Participle.

*Pres. regī, to be ruled.**Perf. rēctus esse, to have been ruled.**Fut. rēctum irī, to be about to be ruled.**Perf. rēctus, ruled.**Gerundive regendus, to be ruled,
deserving to be ruled.*

153

VOCABULARY.

cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōactus, I force, compel.

contrā, against, prep. with acc.

dēducō, ere, dūxī, ductus, I lead away.

ducentī, ae, a, two hundred.

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, I lead.

expeditus, a, um, unencumbered, light-armed.

interē, adv., in the meanwhile.

instruō, ere, strāxī, stractus, I fit out.

longus, a, um, long; nāvis longa, war-ship.

mūnitio, ōis, f., fortification.

quā, where.

superior, ius, higher.

trādō, ere, didī, ditus, I hand over.

tum, then, at that time.

ulterior, ius, farther.

EXERCISES.

154. 1. Dēducitur, dēducti erant. 2. Cōgimur, cōacti sumus. 3. Dūcantur, ducti essent, ductus esse. 4. Mittimur, mittentur, missi sumus. 5. Relinquēbāmur, relinquēbātur, relinquētur. 6. Bellum gerētur, bellum geratur, bellum gestum est, bellum gestum esset. 7. Bella gesta sunt, bella gerēbantur, bella geruntur. 8. Dūcendus, dūci.

155. 1. Intereā castella quoque posita sunt. 2. Duæ cohortēs ad aliam partem mūnitioſum dēducuntur. 3. Veneti hās nāvēs relinquere cōguntur. 4. Trēs legiōnēs in Galliam ulteriōrem¹ missae sunt, quā bellum tum gerēbātur. 5. Duæ legiōnēs expeditae contrā hostēs dūcentur. 6. Nāvēs longae omnibus rēbus instructae erant. 7. In locis superiōribus proelium commissum est.

HOW THE DAY WAS SAVED.

Rēs² in angustō³ fuit. Caesar, qui periculum vīdit, ipse ad legiōnem decurrit. In primam aciem prōcēdit; scūtum ūni ex militibus⁴ detrahīt. Centuriōnēs nōminatim appellāns, proelium redintegrat. Tum militēs audācius pugnant; impetus hostium tardātur; magnus numerus eōrum cadit atque reliquī⁵ pelluntur.

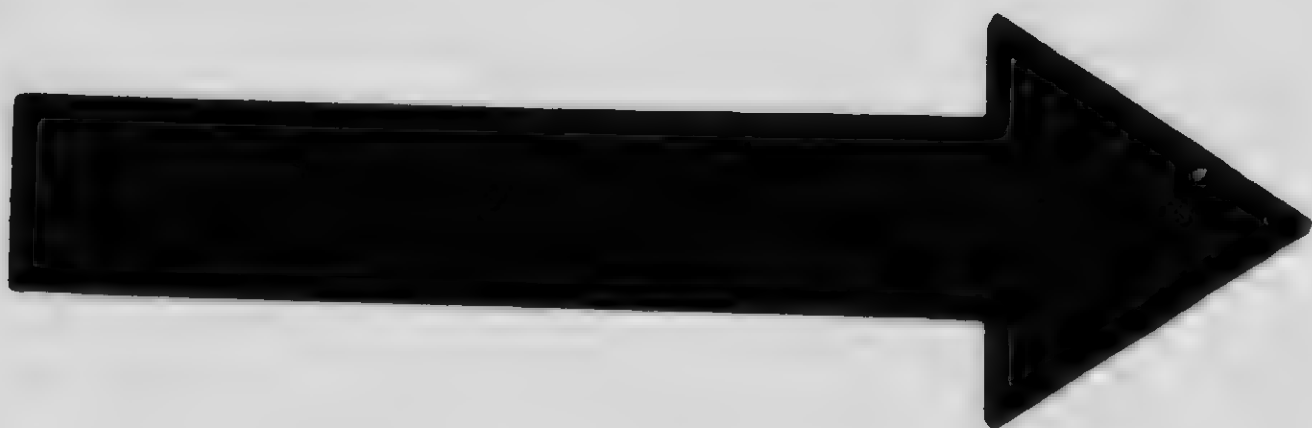
¹ That is, Gaul beyond the Alps.

² rēs: the situation.

³ in angustō: lit. in a narrow (place), i. e., critical.

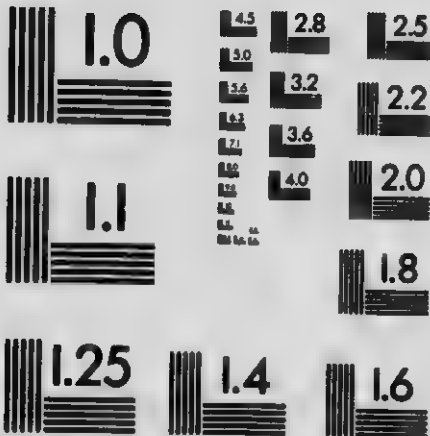
⁴ ūni ex militibus: from one (lit. to one) of the soldiers.

⁵ reliquī: the rest.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

CHAPTER XXVI.

FOURTH (OR 4-) CONJUGATION.---ACTIVE VOICE.

Audiō, I hear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PRES. PASS. PARTIC.
audiō	audire	audivi	auditus

156.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I hear.</i>	PLURAL.
audiō		audimus
audis		auditis
audit		audiunt

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, or I heard.

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

FUTURE.

I shall hear.

audiam	audiemus
audies	audietis
audiet	audient

PERFECT.

I have heard, or I heard.

audivi	audivimus
audivisti	audivistis
audivit	audiverunt, or -ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audiveram	audiverāmus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have heard.

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

157.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.

SINGULAR.

audiam

audiās

audiat

PLURAL.

audiāmus

audiātis

audiant

IMPERFECT.

I should hear, he would hear.

audīrem

audīrēs

audīret

audīrēmus

audīrētis

audīrent

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audiverim

audiveris

audiverit

audiverimus

audiveritis

audiverint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have heard, he would have heard.

audivissem

audivissēs

audivisset

audivissēmus

audivissētis

audivissent

Imperative.

Pres. audī, hear thou;

Fut. audītō, thou shalt hear,

audītō, he shall hear;

audīte, hear ye.

audītōte, ye shall hear,

audīuntō, they shall hear.

Infinitive.

Pres. audīre, to hear.

Perf. audivisse, to have heard.

Fut. auditūrus esse, to be about
to hear.

Participle.

Pres. audiēns, hearing.

(Gen. audientis.)

Fut. auditūrus, about to hear.

Gerund.

Gen. audiendī, of hearing,

Dat. audiendō, for hearing,

Acc. audiendum, hearing,

Abl. audiendō, by hearing.

Supine.

Acc. auditum, to hear,

Abl. auditū, to hear, be heard.

I. VERB STEMS. See § 137, 1.

158.

VOCABULARY.

agmen, minis, n., army (on the march); column.
anteā, previously, before.
conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, come together.
eōdem, adv., to the same place.
fāma, ae, f., report.
ferē, almost, about, practically.
impediō, ire, ivī (ii), itus, I impede, hinder.
mora, ae, f., delay.

mūniō, ire, ivī, itus, I fortify.
nūntius, i (ii), m., messenger.
occāsiō, ōnis, f., occasion, opportunity.
postea, afterwards.
reperiō, ire, repperī, repertus, I discover.
undique, adv., from all parts or sides.
veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, I come.

EXERCISES.

159. 1. Vēnerat, veniet, veniat. 2. Repperimus, reppererāmus. 3. Mūniverunt, mūnient, mūnivimus. 4. Convēnisse, impedītūrus esse. 5. Mūniendō, mūnivissent. 6. Venīre, veniendī, vēnissem. 7. Veniētis, vēnerunt, veniēbat. 8. Veniāmus, venīte, vēnerās. 9. Mūniēbātis, mūnivit, mūnivisse.

160. 1. Caesar reliquās cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābat. 2. Lēgātī ferē tōtius Galliae undique conveniunt. 3. Eōdem convēnimus. 4. Hōs nūntiōs audiāmus. 5. Haec castra, militēs, sine morā mūnite. 6. Hanc fāmam anteā audiverāmus. 7. Equitātus noster agmen hostium impedit. 8. Nōn facile occāsiōnem postea reperiēmus. 9. Complūrēs nūntiī vēnerunt. 10. Illum altum collem mūniēbātis. 11. Nōs omnēs eōdem conveniāmus. 12. Tālem occāsiōnem nōn facile repperissēmus. 13. Reliquās legiōnēs, quae hostēs impediverant, exspectābāmus.

CHAPTER XXVII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, I am heard.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. — audior	PRES. IND. audiri	PERF. IND. auditus sum
----------------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------------------

161.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. audior audiris auditur	<i>I am heard.</i>	PLURAL. audimur audimini audiuntur
----------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiēbar audiēbāris, or -re audiēbātur		audiēbāmur audiēbāmini audiēbantur
-------------------------------------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------------------------

FUTURE.

I shall be heard.

audiar audiēris, or -re audiētur		audiēmur audiēmini audientur
-------------------------------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------------------

PERFECT.

I have been heard, or I was heard.

auditus sum auditus es auditus est		auditi sumus auditi estis auditi sunt
---------------------------------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard

auditus eram auditus erās auditus erat		auditi erāmus auditi erātis auditi erant
-------------------------------------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been heard.

auditus erō auditus eris auditus erit		auditi erimus auditi eritis auditi erunt
------------------------------------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------------------------------

162.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

May I be heard, let him be heard.

SINGULAR.

audiar
 audiāris, or -re
 audiātur

PLURAL.

audiāmur
 audiāmini
 audiantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be heard, he would be heard.

audirer
 audirēris, or -re
 audirētur

audirēmur
 audirēmini
 audirentur

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

auditus sim
 auditus sis
 auditus sit

auditi simus
 auditi sitis
 auditi sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard.

auditus essem
 auditus essetis
 auditus esset

auditi essemus
 auditi essetis
 auditi essent

Imperative.

*Pres. audire, be thou heard;**audimini, be ye heard.**Fut. auditor, thou shalt be heard,**auditor, he shall be heard;**audiuntor, they shall be heard.*

Infinitive.

Participle.

*Pres. audiri, to be heard.**Perf. auditus esse, to have been heard.**Fut. auditum iri, to be about to be heard.**Perf. auditus, heard.**Gerundive audiendus, to be heard, deserving to be heard.*

163.

VOCABULARY.

angustiae , ārum, f. pl., a narrow pass.	nihil , indecl. n., nothing.
aqua , ae, f., water.	opus, operis , n., work, fortification.
captivus , i, m., captive.	paene , almost, nearly.
circumveniō , ire, vēnī, ventus, I surround.	poena , ae, f., punishment.
extrā , outside, beyond, prep. with acc.	prōcurrō , ere, cucurrī, cursum, I run forward.
idōneus , a, um, suitable.	regiō , ōnis, f., region.
inveniō , ire, vēnī, ventus, I find, come upon.	simul , together, at the same time.
nātūra , ae, f., nature.	temere , rashly.
	vōx , vōcis, f., voice, word.

EXERCISES.

164. 1. Invenitur, inventus erat. 2. Impedimur, impediēbatur, impediri. 3. Impeditus, impediti erāmus. 4. Inventus esse, inveniendus. 5. Inveniētur, inventi erunt, inventus esset. 6. Urbs muniētur, urbs munita erat, urbs munitur. 7. Urbēs muniēbantur, urbēs munitae sunt, urbēs muniuntur. 8. Circumvenimur, circumventus est, circumventus esset, circumveniendus. 9. Reperiētur, repertus esse, repertus, reperti sunt.

165. 1. Locus idōneus, nātūrā munitus, repertus est. 2. Nihil dē poenā captivōrum auditum erat. 3. Peditēs nostrī altitudīne aquae impediēbantur. 4. Angustīs impediēmur. 5. Castra magnīs operibus munita sunt. 6. Vōcēs militum simul audiēbantur. 7. Magna cōpia frūmentī in hīs regiōnibus inventa est. 8. Una cohors, quae temere extrā aciem prōcucurrerat, paene circumventa est. 9. Nihil reperiētur. 10. Castra majōra munienda sunt. 11. Altae arborēs in hāc silvā inventae sunt. 12. Illud oppidum altā fossā circumventum est. 13. Multae vōcēs in castrīs auditae sunt.

HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE.

Horātius Cocles erat vir Rōmānus fortissimus. Etrūsci olim Rōmam capere¹ temptābant; sed ille extrēmam partem pontis occupāvit, quem Etrūsci oppugnābant, atque sōlus tōtum hostium agmen sustinuit. Audācter pugnāvit dōnec ab aliis Rōmānis pōns ā tergō² rescissus est.³ Tum armātus sē in Tiberim mīsit, atque incolumis ad suōs⁴ trāsnāvit. Civitās ergā tantam virtūtem grāta fuit; et ei tantum⁵ agrī dōnātum est, quantum⁶ unō diē circumarāre potuit.⁷ Statua quoque ei⁸ in Comitio posita est.⁹

¹ capere: to capture.

² ā tergō: from behind.

³ rescissus est: from rescindō.

⁴ ad suōs: lit. to his own, i.e., to his friends.

⁵ tantum: as much.

⁶ quantum: as.

⁷ potuit: he was able.

⁸ ei: to him, in his honor.

⁹ posita est: from pōnō.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

VERBS IN -*io* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

166. 1. Verbs in *-io* of the Third Conjugation take the endings of the Fourth Conjugation, wherever the latter endings have two successive vowels. This occurs only in the Present System (§ 120, 1; § 124, 1).

167. ACTIVE VOICE. — *Capiō, I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND. <i>capiō,</i>	PRES. INF. <i>capere,</i>	PERF. IND. <i>cēpl,</i>	PERF. PASS. PARTIC. <i>captus.</i>
-----------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------------------

Indicative Mood.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
<i>capiō, capis, capit;</i>		<i>capimus, capitis, capiunt.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;</i>	<i>capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.</i>
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

FUTURE.

<i>capiam, -iēs, -iet;</i>	<i>capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

PERFECT.

<i>cēpl, -istī, -it;</i>	<i>cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt, or -ēre.</i>
--------------------------	------------------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

<i>cēperam, -erās, -erat;</i>	<i>cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.</i>
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>cēperō, -eris, -erit;</i>	<i>cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.</i>
------------------------------	------------------------------------

Subjunctive.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT.	PLURAL.
capiam,	-iās, -iat;		capiamus, -iātis, -iant.
		IMPERFECT.	
caperem,	-erēs, -eret;		caperemus, -erētis, -erent.
		PERFECT.	
cēperim,	-eris, -erit;		cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.
		PLUPERFECT.	
cēpisse,	-issēs, -isset;		cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i> cape;	capite.
<i>Fut.</i> capitō,	capitōte,
capitō;	capiuntō.

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i> capere.
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse.
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse.

Participle.

<i>Pres.</i> capiēns.
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus.

Gerund.

<i>Gen.</i> capiendī,
<i>Dat.</i> capiendō,
<i>Acc.</i> capiendum,
<i>Abl.</i> capiendō.

Supine.

<i>Acc.</i> captum.
<i>Abl.</i> captū.

168. PASSIVE VOICE. — *Capior, I am taken.*

	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
PRINCIPAL PARTS. —	capior,	capī,	captus sum.

Indicative Mood.**PRESENT TENSE.**

capior, caperis, capitur;	capimur, capimini, capiuntur.
---------------------------	-------------------------------

IMPERFECT.

capiēbar, -iēbaris, -iēbatur;	capiēbāmur, -iēbāmini, -iēbantur.
-------------------------------	-----------------------------------

SINGULAR.

FUTURE.

PLURAL.

capiar, -iēris, -iātur;

capiemur, -iēmini, -ientur.

PERFECT.

captus sum, es, est;

capti sumus, estis, sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

captus eram, erās, erat;

capti erāmus, erātis, erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

captus erō, eris, erit;

capti erimus, eritis, erunt.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

capiar, -iāris, -iātur;

capiamur, -iāmini, -iantur.

IMPERFECT.

caperer, -erēris, -erētur;

caperēmur, -erēmini, -erentur.

PERFECT.

captus sim, sis, sit;

capti simus, sitis, sint.

PLUPERFECT.

captus essem, essets, esset;

capti essemus, essētis, essent.

Imperative.

Pres. capere;

capimini.

Fut. capitor,
capitor;

capiantur.

Infinitive.

Participle.

Pres. capi.

Perf. captus esse.

Fut. captum iri.

Perf. captus.

Gerundive capiendus.

109.

VOCABULARY.

accipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, *I receive.*
 capiō, ere, cēpi, captus, *I take, adopt; capture.*
 diripiō, ere, ripui, reptus, *I plunder.*
 faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *I make, do; passive irregular; see § 193.*
 filius, ī (ī), m., *son.*
 fugiō, ere, fugi, fugitūrus, *I flee.*
 interficiō, ere, fēcī, factus, *I kill.*

libertās, tātis, f., *liberty.*
 maiorēs, um, m. pl., *ancestors.*
 mandātum, ī, n., *command, order.*
 nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation, tribe.*
 palūs, lūdis, f., *marsh.*
 pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
 rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
 rursus, *again.*
 subitō, *suddenly.*
 supplicium, ī (ī), n., *torture, punishment.*

EXERCISES.

170. 1. Accipiunt, accipiēbāmus, accipiāmus. 2. Fugit, fūgerant, fūgisce. 3. Faciēbat, facient. 4. Accipitur, accipiētur, acceptus erat. 5. Accipi, accipiendus, acceptus esset. 6. Interfectus est, interficientur, interfecta erat. 7. Interfēcērunt, interficiendus, interfēcisse. 8. Accipiēns, accipiendō, accipis, accipiētis.

171. 1. In eō flūmine pontem fēcerat. 2. Principēs hārum nātiōnum bellum facient. 3. Hostēs rursus subitō impetum fēcērunt. 4. Libertātem ā majōribus accēpimus. 5. Haec mandāta accepta erant. 6. Duo filii hūjus rēgis capti sunt. 7. Aliud cōsiliū capiāmus. 8. Hostēs in palūdēs fūgērunt. 9. Obsidēs magnis suppliciis interfecti sunt. 10. Hōc oppidū diripiēbātur. 11. Filia rēgis capta est. 12. Ex hōc oppidō magnum numerum jūmentōrum diripuimus. 13. Hic homō interfici dēbet.

CHAPTER XXIX.

DEPONENT VERBS.

172. Deponent Verbs have, in the main, *Passive forms* with Active or Neuter *meaning*. But --

- a) They have the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and Supine.
- b) They have the following Passive meanings: always in the Gerundive, and sometimes in the Perfect Passive Participle; as, —

sequendus, to be followed; adeptus, having been attained.

173. Paradigms of Deponent Verbs are —

I. CONJUGATION.

miror, mirārī, mirātus sum, admire.

II. CONJUGATION.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear.

III. CONJUGATION.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow.

IV. CONJUGATION.

largior, largīrī, largitus sum, give.

III. CONJUGATION (IN -ior).

patior, pati, passus sum, suffer.

Indicative Mood.

I.	II.	III.	IV.	III. (in -ior)
<i>Pres.</i> mīror	verēor	sequor	largior	patior
mirāris	verēris	sequeris	largiris	pateris
mirātur	verētur	sequitur	largitur	patitur
mirāmur	verēmur	sequimur	largimur	patimur
mirāmini	verēmini	sequimini	largimini	patimini
mirantur	verentur	sequuntur	largiuntur	patiuntur
<i>Impf.</i> mirābar	verēbar	sequēbar	largiēbar	patiēbar
<i>Fut.</i> mirābor	verēhor	sequar	largiar	patiar
<i>Perf.</i> mirātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	largītus sum	passus sum
<i>Plup.</i> mirātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	largītus eram	passus eram
<i>F.P.</i> mirātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	largītus erō	passus erō

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i> mīrer	verēer	sequar	largiar	patiar
<i>Imp.</i> mirārer	verērer	sequerer	largīrer	paterer
<i>Perf.</i> mirātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	largītus sim	passus sim
<i>Plup.</i> mirātus essem	veritus esset	secūtus esset	largītus esset	passus esset

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i> mirāre	verēre	sequere	largire	patere
<i>Fut.</i> mirātor	verētor	sequitor	largitor	patitor

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i> mirārī	verērī	sequī	largīrī	patī
<i>Perf.</i> mirātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	largītus esse	passus esse
<i>Fut.</i> mirātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	largītūrus esse	passūrus esse

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i> mirāns	verēns	sequēns	largiēns	patiēns
<i>Fut.</i> mirātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	largītūrus	passūrus
<i>Perf.</i> mirātus	veritus	secūtus	largītus	passus
<i>Ger.</i> mirandus	verendus	sequendus	largiendus	patiendus

Gerund.

mirandī	verendī	sequendī	largiendī	patiendī
mirandō, etc.	verendō, etc.	sequendō, etc.	largiendō, etc.	patiendō, etc.

Supine.

mirātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	largitum, -tū	passum, -sū
--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------	-------------

174

VOCABULARY.

adorior, oriri, ortus sum, <i>I attack.</i>	nēmō, c., <i>no one</i> , dat., nēmini,
audeō, ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., ¹ <i>I dare.</i>	acc. nēminem; gen. and abl. not used.
colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, <i>I converse, confer.</i>	paulum, adv., <i>a little.</i>
cōnor, āri, ātus sum, <i>I endeavor, attempt.</i>	Pompejus, ei, m., <i>Pompey.</i>
ēgredior, ī, gressus sum, <i>I march out.</i>	proficiscor, ī, fectus sum, <i>I set out.</i>
insidias, ārum, f. pl., <i>ambush, plot.</i>	prōgredior, ī, gressus sum, <i>I advance, go forward.</i>
Jūra, ae, m., <i>the Jura</i> , chain of mountains on west of Switzerland.	propter, <i>on account of</i> , prep. with acc.
moror, āri, ātus sum, <i>I tarry, delay.</i>	resistō, ere, restiti, <i>I resist.</i>
	revertor, ti, <i>I return.</i>
	Rhodanus, ī, m., <i>the Rhone.</i>

EXERCISES.

175. 1. Audēbimus, ausi erant, ausus. 2. Adoriēbātur, adortus, adortus est. 3. Prōgredimur, prōgressus, prōgrediētur. 4. Adoriendus, morāns, collocūti erāmus. 5. Cōnābar, cōnātus sum. 6. Morēmur, morāmur, morāminī. 7. Morāta est, morāta esset, morāns. 8. Morātus esse, morātus, morandō. 9. Collocūti sumus, colloquimur, colloquantur.

176. 1. Hostēs agmen nostrum ex insidiis adorti sunt. 2. Nēmō resistere ausus est. 3. Caesar dē salūte commūni cum Pompejō colloquēbātur. 4. Helvētiī ex suis finibus ēgressi sunt. 5. Inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum iter facere cōnantur. 6. Propter hās causās proficiscēmur. 7. Hostēs nōn diū morāti sunt. 8. Equitēs paulum prōgressi revertuntur. 9. Īnsidiās verēbāmur. 10. In hanc urbem celeriter revertentur. 11. Hunc collem nātūrā mūnitum dēfendere cōnābimur. 12. Nātūra loci exercitum morāta est.

¹ A few verbs have active forms in the Present system, but passive forms elsewhere. These are called semi-deponent.

CHAPTER XXX.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

177. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, — the Active and the Passive. The Active is formed by combining the Future Active Participle with the auxiliary *sum*, the Passive by combining the Gerundive with the same auxiliary.

Active Periphrastic Conjugation. — Indicative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amātūrus</i> (-a, -um) <i>sum</i> , I am about to love.
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>amātūrus eram</i> , I was about to love.
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amātūrus erō</i> , I shall be about to love.
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amātūrus fui</i> , I have been (was) about to love.
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amātūrus fueram</i> , I had been about to love.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>amātūrus fuerō</i> , I shall have been about to love.

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amātūrus sim</i> , may I be about to love.
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>amātūrus essem</i> , I should be about to love.
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amātūrus fuerim</i> , I may have been about to love.
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amātūrus fuisset</i> , I should have been about to love.

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amātūrus esse</i> , to be about to love.
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amātūrus fuisse</i> , to have been about to love.

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. — Indicative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus</i> (-a, -um) <i>sum</i> , I am to be loved, must be loved.
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>amandus eram</i> , I was to be loved.
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amandus erō</i> , I shall deserve to be loved.
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fui</i> , I was to be loved.
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fueram</i> , I had deserved to be loved.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>amandus fuerō</i> , I shall have deserved to be loved.

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus sim</i> , may I deserve to be loved.
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>amandus essem</i> , I should deserve to be loved.
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuerim</i> , I may have deserved to be loved.
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fuisset</i> , I should have deserved to be loved.

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus esse</i> , to deserve to be loved.
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuisse</i> , to have deserved to be loved.

178.

VOCABULARY.

caedēs, *is, f., slaughter.*
cōservō, *1, I preserve.*
dēdō, *ere, dēdidi, itus, I give up,*
surrender.
fortūna, *ae, f., fortune.*
incommodum, *ī, n., disaster.*

liberō, *1, I set free.*
loquor, *ī, locūtus sum, I speak.*
post, *after, prep. with acc.*
recūsō, *1, I refuse.*
tot, *so many, indecl.*
vita, *ae, f., life.*

EXERCISES.

179. 1. Liberātūrus eram, liberātūrī erāmus. 2. Cōservandus est, cōservandī fuērunt. 3. Liberandī sunt, liberandī erunt. 4. Locūtūrus fuit, locūtūrī fuerant. 5. Profectūrus fui, profectūrī erāmus, profectūra est. 6. Trādendus est, trādendī sunt, trādenda est. 7. Trāditūrus es, trāditūrus fuisti, trāditūrī fuērunt. 8. Sequendus est, sequendī erant.

180. 1. Equitēs ex castrīs ēgressūrī sunt. 2. Post hōc proelium sē dēditūrī erant. 3. Nunc cum magnā caede dīmīcātūrī sunt. 4. Dē hīs tot incommodīs locūtūrus fuit. 5. Vitae nostrae et fortūnae cōservandae sunt. 6. Hae urbēs sunt liberandae. 7. Auxilium nōn est recūsandum.¹ 8. Hostēs hōc oppidum dīreptūrī erant. 9. Haec oppida nōn dīripienda sunt. 10. Hae nāvēs longae omnibus rēbus instruendae sunt. 11. Dē magnā caede hostium locūtūrus fui. 12. Inter nōs et vōs amicitia cōfirmāda est.

¹ est recūsandum = recūsandum est; such inversions are common.

REVIEW.

1. Mandata régis nondum accēpimus. 2. Magnus pōns in hōc flūmine faciendus est. 3. Dēbēs haec castra expugnāre. 4. Equitatus signa vīdit quae in altō colle posita erant. 5. Manē in hōc locō! 6. Proelium in locō apertō commīsērunt. 7. Suspiciōnem timōris vitāre dēbēs. 8. Diligentiam nostram augeāmus! 9. Praesidium parvum in prōvinciā ulteriōre positum est. 10. Hī veterēs amici nōn relinquendi sunt. 11. Multae nāvēs longae instruentur. 12. Hāc famā perterrēbātur. 13. Vōcēs captivōrum in castris audītae sunt.

HOW CORVINUS WON HIS NAME.

Exercitus Rōmānus adversus Gallōs profectus erat, cum¹ quidam ex² Gallis ūnum ex² Rōmānis prōvocāvit. Tum Mārcus Valerius sē obtulit³ et prōcessit armātus in pugnam. Corvus super ejus dextrū brachium sēdit, et alīs atque unguibus oculōs Galli verberābat. Sic superāvit Valerius et a corvō nōmen Corvīnum accēpit.

¹ cum: when.

² ex: of.

³ sē obtulit: presented himself.

CHAPTER XXXI.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

181. A number of Verbs are called Irregular. The most important are *sum*, *dō*, *ferō*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *eō*, *fiō*. The peculiarity of these Verbs is that they append the personal endings in many forms directly to the stem, instead of employing a connecting vowel, as *fer-s* (2d Sing. of *fer-ō*) instead of *fer-is*. They are but the relics of what was once in Latin a large class of Verbs.

182. The Inflection of *sum* has already been given. Its various compounds are inflected in the same way. Examples are—

<i>absum</i>	<i>abesse</i>	<i>āfui</i>	<i>āfutūrus</i>	<i>am absent</i>
<i>Pres. Partic. absēns (absentis), absent.</i>				
<i>adsum</i>	<i>adesse</i>	<i>adfui</i>	<i>adfutūrus</i>	<i>am present</i>
<i>praesum</i>	<i>praesse</i>	<i>praefui</i>	<i>praefutūrus</i>	<i>am in charge of</i>
<i>Pres. Partic. praesēns (praesentis), present.</i>				

183. *Potsum*. In its Present System *possum* is a compound of *pot-* (for *pote*, *able*) and *sum*; *potui* is from an obsolete *potēre*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>possum,</i>	<i>posse,</i>	<i>potui,</i>	<i>to be able.</i>
----------------	---------------	---------------	--------------------

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>possum, potes, potest;</i>	<i>possumus, potestis, possunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>poteram;</i>	<i>poterāmus.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>poterō;</i>	<i>poterimus.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>potui;</i>	<i>potuimus.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>potueram;</i>	<i>potuerāmus.</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>potuerō;</i>	<i>potuerimus.</i>

Subjunctive.

SINGULAR.

Pres. possim, possis, possit;
Imp. possem;
Perf. potuerim;
Plup. potuissem;

PLURAL.

possimus, possitis, possint
 possēmus.
 potuerimus.
 potuissēmus.

Infinitive.

Pres. posse. *Perf.* potuisse.

Participle.

Pres. potēns (as an adjective)

184

Dō, I give.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. — dō, dāre, dedī, dātus.

Active Voice. — Indicative.

Pres. dō, dās, dat;
Imp. dābam, etc.;
Fut. dābō, etc.;
Perf. dedī;
Plup. dederam;
F. P. dederō;

dāmus. dātis, dant.
 dābāmus.
 dābimus.
 dedimus.
 dederāmus.
 dederimus.

Subjunctive.

Pres. dem;
Imp. dārem;
Perf. dederim;
Plup. dedissem;

dēmus.
 dārēmus.
 dederimus.
 dedissēmus.

Imperative.

Pres. dā;
Fut. dātō,
 dātō;

dāte.
 dātōte,
 dantō.

Infinitive.

Pres. dāre.
Perf. dedisse.
Fut. dātūrus esse.

Participle.

dāns.
 dātūrus.

Gerund.

dandī, etc.

Supine.

dātum, dātū.

1. The Passive is inflected regular¹. with the short vowel. Thus:
 dārī, dātur, dābātur, dārētur, etc.

185.

VOCABULARY.

<i>dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, I am wanting, fail.</i>	<i>omnino, adv., altogether.</i>
<i>excedō, ere, cessi, cessurus, I depart from.</i>	<i>pecunia, ae, f., money.</i>
<i>jūs jūrandum; gen. jūris jūrandi, n., oath (jūs and jūrandum are declined separately).</i>	<i>potestas, tatis, f., power, opportunity.</i>
<i>longē, adv., far.</i>	<i>pūblius, a, um, public.</i>
<i>negōtium, i (ii), n., business.</i>	<i>sententia, ae, f., sentiment, opinion.</i>
	<i>talis, e, such.</i>
	<i>vulnus, eris, n., wound.</i>

EXERCISES.

186. 1. Potuerant, potuisse, potuissem. 2. Dedisse, dederant, dent. 3. Aduerunt, adfuisse, adsit. 4. Afuisse, afuissent, aberunt. 5. Dabatur, dari, dati erant. 6. Afui, afuturus, absens. 7. Aderant, aderō, adfui. 8. Potui, posse, poterat. 9. Paterō, potuerō, poterunt, potuerint.

187. 1. Equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs dēerant. 2. Potestas pugnandi nōn dēerit. 3. Pecunia pūblica Pompejō datur. 4. Militibus signum dedit. 5. Ducēs nostri aduerunt. 6. Omnēs lēgātī quī aderant jūs jūrandum dedērunt. 7. Hostēs nōn longē aberant. 8. Tālēs sententiae probārī nōn possunt. 9. Hōc negōtium nobīs dat. 10. Militēs quī vulnera accēperunt ex aciē excēdere nōn poterant. 11. Agrōs hārum nātiōnum nobīs dedistī.

THE LAMB AND THE WOLF.

Agnus et lupus ad eundem rivum venerant. Lupus stabat superior, et longē inferior agnus. Tum lupus, "Cūr" inquit "turbulentam¹ mihi fecisti aquam?" At agnus,² "Quī³ possum id facere? Aqua a tē ad mē decurrit." Sic repulsus lupus, "Ante sex mēses," inquit "maledixisti mihi." Respondit agnus, "Ego nōndum nātus eram." Lupus, "Certē pater tuus" inquit "mihi maledixit," itaque agnum laceravit.

¹ cūr turbulentam fecisti aquam: why have you made the water muddy?

² agnus: i.e., the lamb said.

³ Quī: how?

CHAPTER XXXII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

188.

Ferō, I bear.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.—**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.**

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō, fera, fert;	ferimus, fertis, ferunt. ¹
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbam;	ferēbāmus.
<i>Fut.</i>	feram;	ferēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	tuli;	tulimus.
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram;	tulerāmus.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	tulerō;	tulerimus.

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i>	feram;	ferāmus.
<i>Imp.</i>	ferrem;	ferrēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim;	tulerimus.
<i>Plup.</i>	tulisse;	tulissēmus.

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i>	fer;	ferte.
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō;	fertōte.
	fertō;	feruntō.

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre.
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse.
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus esse.

Participle.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns.
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus.

Gerund.

<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī.
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō.
<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum.
<i>Abi.</i>	ferendō.

Supine.

<i>Acc.</i>	lātum.
<i>Abi.</i>	lātū.

¹ It will be observed that not all the forms of *ferō* lack the connecting vowel. Some of them, as *ferimus, ferunt*, follow the regular inflection of verbs of the Third Conjugation.

PASSIVE VOICE.

feror, ferri, latus sum, to be borne.

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>feror, ferri, fertur;</i>	<i>ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>ferēbar;</i>	<i>ferēbāmur.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ferar;</i>	<i>ferēmur.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>latus sum;</i>	<i>lāti sumus.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>latus eram;</i>	<i>lāti erāmus.</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>latus erō;</i>	<i>lāti erimus.</i>

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferar;</i>	<i>ferāmur.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>ferrer;</i>	<i>ferrēmur.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>latus sim;</i>	<i>lāti simus.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>latus essem;</i>	<i>lāti esēmus.</i>

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferre;</i>	<i>ferimini.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fertor;</i>	—
	<i>fertor;</i>	<i>feruntor.</i>

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferri.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>latus esse.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>lātum iri.</i>

Participle.

<i>Perf. latus.</i>
<i>Ger. ferendus.</i>

So also the Compounds—

<i>afferō</i>	<i>afferre</i>	<i>attuli</i>	<i>allātus</i>	<i>bring</i>
<i>auferō</i>	<i>auferre</i>	<i>abstuli</i>	<i>ablātus</i>	<i>take away</i>
<i>cōnferō</i>	<i>cōnferre</i>	<i>contuli</i>	<i>collātus</i>	<i>collect</i>
<i>inferō</i>	<i>inferre</i>	<i>intuli</i>	<i>illātus</i>	<i>bring against</i>
<i>referō</i>	<i>referre</i>	<i>rettuli</i>	<i>relātus</i>	<i>bring back</i>

189.

VOCABULARY.

afferō, ferre, attuli, allātus, I
bring.

calamitas, tātis, f., calamity.

condiciō, ōnis, f., condition,

ferre.

cōnferō, ferre, tuli, collātus,
I bring together; nō cōnferre,
betake one's self.

ignōminia, ae, f., ignominy, dis-
grace.

impedimentum, i, n., hindrance;
in pl., baggage.

nō . . . quidem, not even; em-
phatic negative, emphasizing the
expression placed between nō
and quidem.

perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, I carry
through, convey; endure.

prōtinus, forthwith, straight-
way.

referō, ferre, rettuli, relātus, I
bring back.

subsidium, i (ii), n., assistance.

tumultus, is, m., uprising.

EXERCISES.

190. 1. Afferet, attulimus, attulisse. 2. Lātus esse, lātī
essent, ferendus. 3. Perfertur, perferēbantur, perlātī sunt.
4. Refert, rettulērunt, rettulissent. 5. Rettulisse, relātī sunt,
referuntur. 6. Tulērunt, ferendō, lātūrus. 7. Tulisse,
ferēns, ferēbat. 8. Affertur, afferētur, allātus esse. 9. Re-
ferēns, referendī, relātūrus. 10. Contulisse, collātus.

191. 1. Hostēs nō primum quidem impetum tulērunt.
2. Nōbis subsidium ferēbat. 3. Pompejus sē prōtinus in
castra contulit. 4. Helvētiī impedimenta in unum locum
contulērunt. 5. Hic nūntius condiōnēs pācis affert.
6. Fāma dē hōc tumultū allāta est. 7. Multās calamitatēs
pertulimus. 8. Ea fāma ad Caesarem perlāta est. 9. Signa
militāria referuntur. 10. Ignōminiam ferre nōn possumus.
11. Hic nūntius fāmam dē tumultū attulit. 12. Sine hāc
spē hōs labōrēs numquam pertulisse. 13. Magna cōpia
frūmentī allāta erat.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

192.

Volō, nōlō, mālō.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

volō,	velle,	volui,	<i>to wish, be willing</i>
nōlō,	nōlle,	nōlui,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>
mālō,	mālle,	mālui,	<i>to prefer.</i>

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	volō,	nōlō,	mālō,
	vis,	nōn vis,	māvis,
	vult;	nōn vult;	māvult;
	volumus,	nolumus,	mālumus,
	vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
	volunt.	nolunt.	mālunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	volēbam.	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.
<i>Fut.</i>	volam.	nōlam.	mālam.
<i>Perf.</i>	volui.	nōlui.	mālui.
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram.	nōlueram.	mālueram.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	voluerō.	nōluerō.	māluerō.

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i>	velim, -is, -it, etc.	nōlim.	mālim.
<i>Imp.</i>	vellem, -ēs, -et, etc.	nōllem.	māllem.
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim.	nōluerim.	māluerim.
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem.	nōluissem.	māluissem.

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i>	nōli,	nōlite.
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlitō, nōlitō; nōlitōte, nōluntō.	

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i>	velle.	nōlle.	mālle.
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse.	nōluisse.	māluisse.

Participle.

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns.	nōlēns.
--------------	----------------	----------------

193.

FIO (Passive of facio).

PRINCIPAL PARTS.—*fiō, fieri,¹ factus sum, to become, be made, occur.*

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fiō, fis, fit;</i>	<i>simus, sitis, fiunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>fiābam;</i>	<i>fiābāmus.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fiām;</i>	<i>fiāmus.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus sum;</i>	<i>facti sumus.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>factus eram;</i>	<i>facti erāmus.</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>factus erō;</i>	<i>facti erimur.</i>

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fiām;</i>	<i>fiāmus.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>fierem;</i>	<i>fiērēmus.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus sim;</i>	<i>facti simus.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>factus essem;</i>	<i>facti esēmus.</i>

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fi;</i>	<i>fit.</i>
--------------	------------	-------------

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>feri.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus esse.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>factum iri.</i>

Participle.

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus.</i>
<i>Ger.</i>	<i>faciendus.</i>

IM.

VOCABULARY.

causa, ae, f., cause, reason.

certus, a, um, sure; compar. certior in phrase certior fieri, be informed (made more certain).

concursum, ūs, m., a running together.

crōber, bra, brum, frequent.

dēsērō, ere, serui, sertus, I abandon, desert.

discedit, ere, cessi, cessurus, I depart.

hūc, adv., hither.

maritimus, a, um, of the sea, maritime.

ob, on account of, prep. with acc.

ōra, ae, f., coast.

per, through, by means of, prep. with acc.

perfuga, ae, m., deserter.

prō, in front of, prep. with abl.

quārē, adv., wherefore, why?

repentinus, a, um, sudden.

semper, always.

socius, i (ii), m., ally, comrade.

¹ Note that the *i* is regularly short before *er* in this verb.

EXERCISES.

195. 1. Malumus, maluimus, malebat. 2. Mavultis, maluisset, noluisse. 3. Fiebat, factum est, fiat. 4. Volueratis, voluisti, volueris. 5. Volētis, volētis, voluisse. 6. Mavis, maluisse, mavult. 7. Malit, malet, maluit. 8. Volueram, voluissetis, voluit. 9. Fit, factum erat, factus. 10. Nōn vult, nōlet, nōluerant.

196. 1. Ob eam causam crebra proelia fiebant. 2. Ab orā maritimā discēdere nōlebat. 3. Quārē sociōs nostrōs semper vexāre vultis? 4. Ex castris Gallōrum fit fuga repentina. 5. Dē his rēbus per perfugās certior factus est. 6. Prō castris magnus concursus fiebat. 7. Hūc venīre nōluimus. 8. Officiū suū dēserere nōluerat. 9. Maluissēmus in his locis manēre. 10. Ab hōc oppidō discēdere nōluissēmus. 11. Hās victōriās laudāre volēbāmur. 12. Nōs dē hōc Gallōrum tumultū certiorēs facti sumus. 13. In hāc urbe manēre mālumus.

THE PHILOSOPHER AND THE KING.

Philosophus ā rēge talentum petiit. Rēx respondit, "Talentum est plūs quam¹ quod² philosophus petere dēbet." Tunc dēnārium petiit, cum rēx respondit, "Dēnārius est minus quam quod rēx dare dēbet."

THE FOX AND THE GRAPES.

Vulpēs famē coācta³ ūvā in altā vineā pendentem⁴ appetēbat, summīs vīribus saliēns. Ut⁵ tangere nōn potuit, discessit. "Nōndum," inquit, "mātūra est; nōlō acerbam⁶ sūmere."

¹ quam: than.

² quod: what.

³ famē coācta: forced by hunger.

⁴ pendentem: hanging.

⁵ ut: as, when.

⁶ acerbam: limiting eam understood referring to ūvā; translate: when sour.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

197.

Eō.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. — **eō**, **ire**, **ivi** (ii), **itum** (est), *to go*

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	eō, is, it;	imus, itis, eunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	ibam;	ibāmus.
<i>Fut.</i>	ibō;	ibimus.
<i>Perf.</i>	ivi (ii);	ivimus (iimus).
<i>Plup.</i>	iveram (ieram);	iverāmus (ierāmus).
<i>Fut. P.</i>	iverō (ierō);	iverimus (ierimus).

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i>	eam;	eāmus.
<i>Imp.</i>	irem;	irēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	iverim (ierim);	iverimus (ierimus).
<i>Plup.</i>	ivissem (iissem, issem);	ivissēmus (iissēmus, issēmus).

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i>	i;	ite.
<i>Fut.</i>	itō,	itōte,
	itō;	euntō.

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i>	ire.
<i>Perf.</i>	ivisse (iisse, isse).
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse.

Participle.

<i>Pres.</i>	iēns.
	(<i>Gen.</i> euntis.)
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus.

Gerund.

eundi, etc.

Supine.

itum, itū.

1. Transitive compounds of **eō** admit the full Passive inflection:
as, adeor, adīris, adītur, etc.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs lack certain forms. The following are the most important : —

196. USED MAINLY IN THE PERFECT SYSTEM.

Coepl, *I have begun.* **Memini**, *I remember.* **Ōdi**, *I hate.*

Indicative Mood.

<i>Perf.</i>	coepi.	memini.	ōdi.
<i>Plup.</i>	coeperam.	memineram.	ōderam.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	coeperō.	meminerō.	ōderō.

Subjunctive.

<i>Perf.</i>	coeperim.	meminerim.	ōderim.
<i>Plup.</i>	coepissem.	meminissem.	ōdissem.

Imperative.

Sing. mementō ; *Plur.* mementōte.

Infinitive.

<i>Perf.</i>	coepisse.	meminisse.	ōdisse.
<i>Fut.</i>	coepturus esse.		ōsūrus esse.

Participle.

<i>Perf.</i>	coeptus, begun.	ōsus.
<i>Fut.</i>	coepturus.	ōsūrus.

1. Note that **memini** and **ōdi**, though Perfect in form, are Present in sense. Similarly the Pluperfect and Future Perfect have the force respectively of the Imperfect and Future ; as, **memineram**, *I remembered* ; **ōderō**, *I shall hate*.

199.

VOCABULARY.

adeō, ire, īl, itus, *I go to, visit.*
 circiter, adv., *about.*
 circumeō, ire, īl, itus, *I go around,*
surround.
 clam, *secretly.*
 duodecim, indecl., *twelve.*
 eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*
 incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *I begin.*
 ineō, ire, īl, itus, *I enter upon;*
 cōnsilium inire, *form a plan.*

initium, ī (īl), n., *beginning.*
 injūria, ae, f., *wrong, injustice.*
 intereō, ire, īl, iturus, *I perish.*
 Mosa, ae, m., *the river Meuse.*
 redeō, ire, īl, itum, *I return.*
 sinister, tra, trum, *left.*
 trans, across, prep. with acc.
 transeō, ire, īl, itus, *I cross.*
 turpis, e, base.
 unde, whence.

EXERCISES.

200. 1. Meminerat, meminerō, meminisse. 2. Adiisse, ad-
 isset, adeāmus. 3. Eundō, itūrus esse, ierat. 4. Redimus,
 rediimus, redeāmus. 5. Interibit, interierant. 6. Interiisse,
 interitūrus, interiit. 7. Trānsibāmus, trānsiit, trānsibunt.
 8. Adimus, adibant, adiī. 9. Redibitis, redierunt, redibas,
 rediens. 10. Ōdisse, ōdit, ōderat.

201. 1. Hostēs sinistrum cornū circumire cōnantur.
 2. Magna pars exercitūs interiit. 3. Caesar eō, unde redie-
 rat, proficiscitur. 4. Circiter duodecim milia Germānōrum
 Rhēnum trānsibant. 5. Hostēs trānseundi initium faciunt.
 6. Equitēs, quī trāns Mosam ierant, nōndum redierant.
 7. Hās nātiōnēs adibimus. 8. Barbarī cōnsilia dē bellō
 clam inire incipiunt. 9. Hōc flūmen trānsire coepērunt.
 10. Hās injūriās meminerāmus. 11. Turpēs cīvīs ōdimus.
 12. Ex hāc prōvinciā in urbem redierat. 13. Omnēs injūriās
 meministī quās pater tuus pertulit. 14. Quārē initium
 trānseundi fēcistī?

CHAPTER XXXV.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

202. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English, *it snows, it seems*, etc. They have no personal subject, but may take an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun; as, *mē pudet hōc fēcisse*, lit. *it shames me to have done this*; *hōc decet*, *this is fitting*. Examples are: —

paenitet	paenitēre	paenituit	<i>it repents</i>
pudet	pudēre	puduit	<i>it causes shame</i>
miseret	miserēre	miseruit	<i>it causes pity</i>
licet	licēre	licuit	<i>it is permitted</i>
oportet	oportēre	oportuit	<i>it is fitting</i>
cōstat	cōstāre	cōstitit	<i>it is evident</i>
accidit	accidere	accidit	<i>it happens</i>

Specially to be noted is the impersonal use of such Passive forms as, —

curritur	lit. <i>it is run</i>	i.e. <i>some one runs</i>
ventum est	lit. <i>it has been come</i>	i.e. <i>some one has come</i>
veniendum est	lit. <i>it must be come</i>	i.e. <i>somebody must come</i>

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS.

203. Questions may be either Word-Questions or Sentence-Questions.

1. WORD-QUESTIONS. These are introduced by the various interrogative pronouns and adverbs; such as — *quis, quī, quō, quā, etc*. Thus: —

quis venit, *who comes?*

quam diū manēbit, *how long will he stay?*

2. SENTENCE-QUESTIONS. These are introduced—

a) By *nōnne* implying the answer 'yes'; as, —*nōnne vidēs, do you not see?*b) By *num* implying the answer 'no'; as, —*num expectās, do you expect? (i.e. you don't expect, do you?)*c) By the enclitic *-ne*, appended to the emphatic word (which regularly stands first), and simply asking for information; as, —*vidēane, do you see?*

3. ANSWERS.

a) The answer Yes is expressed by *ita*, *etiam*, *vērō*, *sānē*, or by repetition of the verb; as, —*'visne locum mutēmus?' 'sānē.' 'Shall we change the place?' 'Certainly.'**'estiane vōs lēgātī?' 'sumus.' 'Are you envoys?' 'Yes.'*b) The answer No is expressed by *nōn*, *minimē*, *minimē vērō*, or by repeating the verb with a negative; as, —*'eane praeteriit?' 'nōn.' 'Has she passed?' 'No.'**'estne frāter intus?' 'nōn est.' 'Is your brother within?' 'No.'*

XIV.

VOCABULARY.

*concurrō, ere, currī, concurr-
sum, run together.**dicō, ere, dixī, dictus, I say.**liberī, ōrum, c., children (free-
born).**mellior, ius, better, comp. to
bonus.**-nē, enclitic interrog. particle, ask-
ing for information.**neglegō, ere, neglēxi, neglēctus, I neg-
lect.**nōnne, interrog. particle, expect-
ing answer "yes."**num, interrog. particle, expecting
answer "no."**profugiō, ere, fugī, fugitūrus,
I flee, escape.**quandō, when, interrog.**quō, whither, interrog. and rel. adv.**scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus,
I write.**vir, virī, m., man.*

EXERCISES.

205. 1. Audacter resistendum est. 2. Undique ad signa concurratur.¹ 3. Eo conventum est.² 4. Nonne has litteras scripsisti? Scripsi. 5. Num viri boni patriam defendere recusant? Non recusant. 6. Num hos liberos neglexisti? 7. Quando meliorem virum videbis? 8. Hasne sententias probavistis? Non probavimus. 9. Quo profugerunt? 10. Quid dixisti? 11. Undique ad signa concursus est. 12. Nonne vetera incommoda meministi? Memini. 13. Non oportet officium negligere. 14. Licet res meliores sperare.

206. 1. When will you come to us? 2. Where have you been? 3. Where (=whither) have they gone? 4. What would you have said? 5. Did you not see us? 6. You will not neglect your duty, will you? No. 7. Have they returned? Yes. 8. Would you have written this letter? No. 9. Who will remain here?

REVIEW.

1. Eo rediimus unde profecti eramus. 2. Initium huius rei meminisse non potui. 3. Aliud consilium intre clam coeperunt. 4. Non vult ullius hominis amicus fieri. 5. Caesar de tumultu Gallorum certior fiet. 6. Talia incommoda vix perferri possunt. 7. Fama huius tumultus statim ad Caesarem allata est. 8. Omnia pericula huius itineris fortiter perfers. 9. Magna copi frumenti in his oppidis aderat. 10. Omnis spes salutis deest. 11. Hos montes videre vix poteris. 12. Helvetii post quinque menses in fines suos redire coacti sunt. 13. Caesar cum eis de pacis condicionibus colloquebatur.

¹ Lit. it is run together, i.e. the men rush.

² Lit. it was assembled thither, i.e. men assembled there.

³ See p. 38, § 89, footnote 1

PART III.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

207. The Accusative is used as the case of the Direct Object.

208. The Direct Object may express either of the two following relations:—

A. The PERSON OR THING AFFECTED by the action; as,—
cōnsulem interfecit, he slew the consul.

B. The RESULT PRODUCED by the action; as,—
librum scripsi, I wrote a book (i.e. produced one).

1. This Accusative occurs especially in the case of a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective used Substantively; as,—

hōc moneō, I advise this, i.e. I give this advice;
hōc rogō, I request this, i.e. I make this request.

TWO ACCUSATIVES—DIRECT OBJECT AND PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.

209. 1. Many Verbs of *Making, Choosing, Calling, Showing*, and the like, take two Accusatives, one of the Person or Thing Affected, the other a Predicate Accusative; as,—

mē hērēdem fecit, he made me heir.

Here *mē* is Direct Object, *hērēdem* Predicate Accusative.

2. The Predicate Accusative may be an Adjective as well as a Noun; as, —

hominēs caecōs reddit cupiditās, covetousness renders men blind.

3. In the Passive the Direct Object becomes the Subject, and the Predicate Accusative becomes Predicate Nominative; as, —

urbs Rōma vocāta est, the city was called Rome.

210.

VOCABULARY.

<i>aedificium</i> , I (II), n., <i>building</i> .	<i>inimicus</i> , I, m., <i>a (personal) enemy</i> .
<i>alacer, cris, ore, eager</i> .	<i>Lentulus</i> , I, m., <i>Lentulus, a man's name</i> .
<i>appellō</i> , I, <i>I name, call</i> .	<i>Octodūrus</i> , I, m., <i>Octodurus, a city of the Veragri</i> .
<i>Bacēnia</i> , is, f., <i>Bacenis, a forest in Germany</i> .	<i>opportūnus</i> , a, um, <i>fit, opportune</i> .
<i>dēligō</i> , ere, lēgī, lēctus, <i>I choose</i> .	<i>praetor</i> , ōris, m., <i>praetor</i> .
<i>dolor</i> , ōris, m., <i>grief</i> .	<i>privātus</i> , a, um, <i>private</i> .
<i>efficiō</i> , ere, fēcī, fectus, <i>I make, render</i> .	<i>pugna</i> , ae, f., <i>fight, battle</i> .
<i>frāter, tris</i> , m., <i>brother</i> .	<i>-que</i> , and, <i>enclitic conj.</i>
<i>hiemō</i> , I, <i>I pass the winter</i> .	<i>sentiō</i> , ire, sēnsī, sēsus, <i>I feel</i> .
<i>incendō</i> , ere, cendī, cēsus, <i>I set on fire</i> .	

EXERCISES.

211. 1. Haec rēs hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcerat.
 2. Populus Rōmānus Lentulum praetōrem fēcit. 3. Galba in vicō qui Octodūrus appellātur hiemat. 4. Helvētīi hunc locum opportūnissimum iudicāverunt. 5. Caesarem de his rēbus certiōrem faciunt. 6. Hic homō dux dēlectus est. 7. Suum frātre inimicum iudicāverat. 8. Haec silva appellātur Bacēnis. 9. Helvētīi vicōs reliquaque privāta aedificia incendunt. 10. Dolōrem sentīmus. 11. Magnum exercitum parāvimus. 12. Gallī hunc montem Jūram appellāverunt. 13. Virtūs imperātōris militēs fortiōrēs efficit.

212. 1. We have made Galba leader. 2. Galba had been made leader. 3. The Helvetii called this town Geneva.

4. The valor of the commander made¹ the soldiers braver.
5. The Belgians were adjudged the bravest of the Gauls.
6. Caesar adjudged the Belgians the bravest of the Gauls.
7. Whom, O soldiers,² will you choose (as) commander?

INCORRUPTIBLE.

Lēgātus quidam ā rēge Persārum magnum pondus auri ferēns Thēbās³ vēnit, ut Epaminōndam pecūniā corrumpere⁴. Is autem⁵ aurum accipere nōluit. "Nihil enim," inquit, "opus pecūniā est."⁶ Nam sī rēx ea vult quae Thēbānīs⁷ sunt ūtilia, sine pecūniā faciām; sīn contrāria⁸ vult, nōn satis auri et argenti⁹ habet."

¹ Use efficiē.

² The Vocative regularly stands in the second place in the sentence.

³ Thēbās: to Thebes.

⁴ ut corrumpere: in order that he might bribe, in order to bribe.

⁵ Is autem: but he; autem regularly stands second in the Latin sentence.

⁶ nihil opus pecūniā est: there is no need of money.

⁷ Thēbānīs: to the Thebans.

⁸ contrāria: the contrary.

⁹ satis auri et argenti: lit. enough of gold and silver, i.e. enough gold and silver.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THE ACCUSATIVE (Continued).

TWO ACCUSATIVES. — PERSON AND THING.

213. 1. Some Verbs take two Accusatives, one of the Person Affected, the other of the Result Produced, especially verbs of *Asking, Demanding, Teaching, etc.*; as, —

tū hanc rogō, I ask you this;

tū litteras doceō, I teach you (your) letters.

2. But many verbs of *asking* (especially *petō*), instead of the Accusative of the Person, take *ā* with the Ablative; as, —

auxilium ā tū petō, I request help from you.

3. In the Passive construction the Accusative of the Person becomes the Subject, and the Accusative of the Thing is retained; as, —

is omnes artes edoctus est, he was taught all accomplishments.

TWO ACCUSATIVES WITH COMPOUNDS.

214. 1. Transitive compounds of *trans* may take two Accusatives, one dependent upon the Verb, the other upon the Preposition; as, —

militēs flumen trāducit, he leads his soldiers across the river.

2. In the Passive the Accusative dependent upon the preposition is retained; as, —

militēs flumen trādūcēbantur, the soldiers were being led across the river.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

215. *Duration of Time and Extent of Space* are denoted by the Accusative; as, —

quadrāgintā annōs vixit, he lived forty years;

arborēs quinquāgintā pedēs altae, trees fifty feet high.

ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT OF MOTION.

216. 1. The Accusative of Limit of Motion is used —

a) With names of *Towns, Small Islands, and Peninsulas*; as, —

Rōmam vēnī, I came to Rome;

b) With *domum, domōe, rūe*; as, —

domum revertitur, he returns home.

2. Other designations of place, than those above mentioned require a Preposition to denote Limit of Motion; as, —

ad Italiam vēnit, he came to Italy.

217.

VOCABULARY.

ā, ab, from, prep. with abl.; before a vowel or *h*, the form *ab* must be used.

ac (atque), and, and also; *ac* is not used before vowels.

annus, I, m., year.

Athēnae, ārum, f., Athens.

bīdūm, I, n., two days.

cottidiē, adv., every day, daily.

domus, ūs, f., house, home.

flāgitō, I, I demand.

Hibērus, I, m., Hiberus, a river in Spain.

interim, in t., meanwhile.

moneō, ēre, ūi, itus, I advise, warn.

obtineō, ēre, ūi, tentus, I occupy, hold.

opē, opīs, f. (nom. sing. is not used), power, help; in pl., *re-*
munera.

passus, ūs, m., pace (five feet).

petō, ēre, īvi (ī), itus, I seek, request.

polliceor, ēri, itus sum, I promise.

rēgnūm, I, n., kingdom.

rogō, I, I ask.

sescenti, ae, a, six hundred.

trādūcō, ēre, dūxi, ductus, I lead across.

EXERCISES.

218. 1. Caesar interim cottidiē Haeduōs frūmentum, quod polliciti erant, flāgitat. 2. Ā tē opem petō. 3. Sine periculō ac timōre cōpiās Hibērum trādūxit. 4. Sententiam rogātus est. 5. Hōc mē monēs. 6. Decem annōs rēgnūm obtinuit. 7. Bīdūm in hīs locīs morātus est. 8. Hic

locus ab hostibus sescentōs passūs aberat. 9. Cōpiās domum redūxit. 10. Athēnās redierat. 11. In Galliam contendimus. 12. Decem milia passuum reducti sunt. 13. Te pecūniam quam mihi debēbās flagitāvi. 14. Cōpiae nostrae Rhēnum trāductae sunt. 15. Illa turris trigintā pedēs alta fuit.

219. 1. I shall teach you all these things. 2. We had been taught these things. 3. I have demanded the money of you. 4. These envoys requested help from Caesar. 5. Have you been asked your opinion? 6. Caesar will lead his troops across the Rhine. 7. We remained here ten years. 8. The camp of the enemy is a thousand paces distant. 9. We shall come to Rome. 10. Return home.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

THE DATIVE

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT.

220. The commonest use of the Dative is to denote the person *to whom* something is *given, said, or done.* Thus : —

I. With transitive verbs in connection with the Accusative ; as, —

hanc pecuniam mihi dat, he gives me this money.

II. With many intransitive verbs ; as, —

nēmini cōdit, he yields to no one ;

tibi suscōnseō, I am angry with you.

a) Here belong many verbs signifying : *favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade, and the like ;* as, —

Caesar populāribus favet, Caesar favors (i.e. is favorable to) the popular party.

amicis cōfidō, I trust (to) my friends.

III. With many verbs compounded with the prepositions : *ad, ante, com- (con-), in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes circum ;* as, —

afflictis succurrit, he helps the afflicted ;

exercitui praefuit, he was in command of the army ;

Labiēnum exercitui praefecit, he put Labienus in charge of the army.

221.

VOCABULARY.

- confidō, ere, fīus sum, semi-dep., I trust.*
inferō, ferre, tuli, illātus, I bring upon.
inteream, esse, fui, I am present
Labienus, I, m., Labienus, a lieutenant of Caesar.
mulier, eris, f., woman.
noceō, ēre, ul, itūrus, I injure, harm.
pareō, ere, peperci, parārus, I spare.
persuadeō, ēre, suāsi, suāsum, I persuade.
placeō, ēre, ul, placitūrus, I please.
praeficiō, ere, fēcī, lectus, I put in charge.
praemium, I (II), n., reward.
praesum, esse, fui, I am in charge of.
recens, gen., recentis, recent.
res publica, gen. rei publicae, f., state, republic.
Sabinus, I, m., Sabinus, a lieutenant of Caesar.
sermo, ōnis, m., conversation.
terror, ōris, m., terror, fear.

EXERCISES.

222. 1. Rei publicae nocētis. 2. Caesar mulieribus pepercit. 3. Sabinus ei magnis praemiis persuāsit. 4. Caesar ei mūnitiōni quam fecerat Labienum praefecit. 5. Laudat eos qui huic negotiō praefuerant. 6. Milites nostri maximum terrōrem hostibus inferunt. 7. Caesar huic legiōni propter virtutem maximē confidēbat. 8. Hōc cōsiliū nobis placet. 9. Ego huic sermōni interfui. 10. Militibus propter recentem victōriam magna praemia dōnat. 11. Parcite, civēs mei, rei publicae. 12. Nullis legātis verbis meis persuādere potueram. 13. Nōs illi negotiō praefecerat.

223. 1. We shall present rewards to our soldiers. 2. I had already given you¹ the letter. 3. Let us spare these children! 4. We have not injured you. 5. Trust these soldiers! 6. I had persuaded all these envoys. 7. I should easily have persuaded your brother. 8. We shall put you in charge of the smaller camp. 9. Caesar was in charge of many legions. 10. Who will bring war upon us?

¹ Observe that the special sign of the indirect object (*to, for*) is often lacking in English. The pupil must have regard to the meaning.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

THE DATIVE (Continued).

DATIVE OF REFERENCE.

224. 1. The Dative of Reference denotes the person to whom a statement refers, of whom it is true, or to whom it is of interest; as, —

mihi ante oculos versāris, you hover before my eyes (lit. hover before the eyes to me).

NOTE. — The Dative of Reference, unlike the Dative of Indirect Object, does not modify the verb, but rather the sentence as a whole. It is often used where, according to the English idiom, we should expect a Genitive.

DATIVE OF AGENCY.

225. With the Gerundive the Dative is used to denote agency; as, —

haec nobis agenda sunt, these things must be done by us;
mihi eundem est, I must go (lit. it must be gone by me).

DATIVE OF POSSESSION.

226. The Dative of Possession occurs with the verb *esse* in such expressions as, —

mihi est liber, I have a book (lit. a book is to me).

DATIVE OF PURPOSE.

227. The Dative of Purpose designates the end toward which an action is directed or for which something exists; as, —

castris locum deligere, to choose a place for a camp;
nobis sunt odii, they are an object of hatred to us (lit. are to us for hatred).

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

228. The use of the Dative with Adjectives corresponds very closely to its use with verbs. Thus: —

It occurs with adjectives signifying: *friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, related to, suitable, etc.*; as, —

mihī inimicus, hostile to me;

proximus ripae, next to the bank;

castris idoneus locus, a place suitable for a camp.

229.

VOCABULARY.

adversus, a, um, adverse.

colloquium, i (ii), n., conference.

cōspectus, ūs, m., view, sight.

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, I appoint.

facinus, facinoris, n., crime.

pār, gen. paris, equal.

pēs, pedis, m., foot.

prōiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, I throw, cast.

proximus, a, um, nearest, next;
see § 74, 1.

scūtum, i, n., shield.

tēlum, i, n., javelin.

Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl., Treveri,
a tribe of Belgians.

ūsus, ūs, m., use, service.

ventus, i, m., wind.

EXERCISES.

230. 1. Hostēs nobīs in cōspectum vēnerant. 2. Omnēs sē Caesarī ad pedēs prōjēcērunt. 3. Patria nobīs dēfendenda est. 4. Acrīter nobīs resistendum est.¹ 5. Militibus sunt scūta tēlaque. 6. Quīnque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō reliquit. 7. Una rēs militibus magnō ūsui erat. 8. Diēs colloquīi dictus est. 9. Hic ventus nobīs adversus est. 10. Nulla poena huic facinorī pār est. 11. Trēverī proximī Rhēnō sunt. 12. Haec verba tibi et amicīs tuis probanda sunt. 13. Cōnsilium vestrum nobīs magnō ūsui erat. 14. Gallī exercitui Rōmānō parēs nōn erant.

231. 1. This camp must be bravely defended by us. 2. We must make resistance (= it must be resisted by us; § 202). 3. The Helvetii had many villages. 4. The Romans had large fleets. 5. Let us appoint a day for a conference. 6. Caesar chose a place for a camp. 7. This place was suitable for a cavalry battle. 8. These villages are next the sea. 9. This thing was of great assistance² to us.

¹ See § 225, 2d example. ² Compare the seventh sentence in the Latin Exercise.

CHAPTER XL.

THE GENITIVE.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

232. With Nouns the Genitive is *the case which defines the meaning of the limited noun more closely*. Here belong especially : —

233. Genitive of Possession or Ownership ; as, —

domus Cicerōnis, Cicero's house.

1. The Possessive Genitive is often used predicatively, especially with *esse* and *fieri* ; as, —

domus est rēgis, the house is the king's.

234. Subjective Genitive. This denotes *the person who makes or produces something or who has a feeling* ; as, —

*diota Platōnis, the utterances of Plato,
timōrēs liberōrum, the fears of the children.*

235. Objective Genitive. This denotes *the object of an action or feeling* ; as, —

metus deōrum, fear of the gods.

236. Genitive of the Whole (Partitive Genitive). This designates *the whole of which a part is taken* ; as, —

magna pars hominum, a great part of mankind.

1. The Genitive of the Whole occurs especially with the Nominative or Accusative Singular Neuter of Pronouns, or of Adjectives used substantively ; as, —

*quid cōsili, what purpose?
plūs auctōritātis, more authority.*

237. Genitive of Quality. The Genitive modified by an Adjective is used to denote quality; as, —

vir magnae virtutis, a man of great virtue;

fossa quīndecim pedum, a trench fifteen feet wide (or deep).

238

VOCABULARY.

āmittō, ere, *misī*, *missus*, I lose.

ancora, ae, f., anchor.

arcessō, ere, *ivī*, *itus*, I summon.

armātūra, ae, f., equipment.

cēteri, ae, a, the rest, the other.

cūstōdia, ae, f., custody.

dīcō, ere, *dīxī*, *dictus*, I utter.

imperium, i (ii), n., rule, command.

iūstus, a, um, just.

levis, e, light.

modus, i, m., manner, kind.

nōnnūllus, a, um, some (§ 81).

pābulum, i, n., forage.

quantus, a, um, how much, how great.

satis, enough, indecl.

supersum, esse, *ful*, I remain, am left.

tantus, a, um, so much, so great.

vāllum, i, n., intrenchment.

via, ae, f., road, way.

EXERCISES.

239. 1. *Ancorae nāvium āmissae sunt.* 2. *Imperium populi Rōmāni iūstissimum erat.* 3. *Cēteris cohortibus cūstōdiam captivōrum trādīdit.* 4. *Quantum viae superest?* 5. *Tantum pābuli dēerat.* 6. *Castris erat satis praesidi.* 7. *Dux peditēs levis armātūrae arcessivit.* 8. *Erat vāllum decem pedum in altitūdinem.* 9. *Nōnnūllae sententiae ejus modi dīcēbantur.* 10. *Hic adulēscēns summae dīligentiae fuerat.* 11. *Turrēs magnae altitūdinis cōpiās impediunt.* 12. *Quantum frūmenti et pābuli dēfuit?* 13. *Adulēscēntem hūjus modi semper amāmus.*

240. 1. Caesar's legions were brave. 2. The onset of the Gauls was withstood. 3. This victory of our troops was most welcome to the Romans. 4. Your recollection of my favors is most welcome to me. 5. How much forage was in

the camp? 6. There was not enough money.¹ 7. These soldiers were of the greatest valor. 8. Our soldiers filled up a trench ten feet in² depth.

TWO JESTS OF CICERO.

Vatīnius tantum³ paucōs diēs cōsulātum gessit. Hinc Cicerō notābili urbānitātē dixit, "Magnum ostentum annō Vatīni factum est, quod illō cōsule⁴ nec hiems nec vēr nec aestās nec autumnus fuit."

Lentulus, gener Cicerōnis, fuit homō exiguae statūrae. Cum⁵ socer illum longō gladiō accinctum vidisset, "Quis" inquit "generum meum ad illum gladium alligāvit?"

THE FROG AND THE OX.

In prātō quondam rāna bovem cōspexit et invidiā tācta pellem inflāvit. Tum nātōs⁶ rogāvit num⁷ bove lātior⁸ esset. Illi negābant. Rūrsus pellem intendit rūrsusque⁹ rogāvit uter major esset.¹⁰ Illi dixerunt, "Bōs est major." Dēnique validius cōnātur sē inflāre atque corpus rūpit.

¹ Translate: 'Not enough of money was.'

² Use *in* with the acc.

³ *tantum*: only.

⁴ *illō cōsule*: lit. *he (being) consul, i.e. in his consulship.*

⁵ *cum vidisset*: translate as though indicative, — *when he had seen.*

⁶ *nātōs*: her children.

⁷ *num esset*: whether she was.

⁸ *bove lātior*: broader than the ox.

⁹ *rūrsusque*: and again.

¹⁰ *esset*: was.

CHAPTER XLI.

THE GENITIVE (Continued).

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

241. The Genitive is used with many Adjectives *to limit the extent of their application*. Thus: —

1. With Adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fulness*, and their opposites; as, —

studiosus discendi, *desirous of learning*;
peritus belli, *skilled in war*.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

242. The Genitive is used with the following classer of Verbs: —

Memini, **Reminiscor** (*remember*), **Obliviscor** (*forget*)¹; as, —
animus praeteritorum meminit, *the mind remembers the past*.

Admoneo, **Commoneo**, **Commonefacio**.

243. These Verbs, in addition to an Accusative of the person, occasionally take a Genitive of the thing; as, —

te admoneo amicitiae nostrae, *remind you of our friendship*.

Verbs of Judicial Action.

244. Verbs of *Accusing, Condemning, Convicting, Acquitting* take the Genitive of the *charge*; as, —

me furti accusat, *he accuses me of theft*.

Genitive with Impersonal Verbs.

245. The Impersonals **pudet**, **paenitet**, **miseret**, **taedet**, **piget** take the Accusative of *the person affected*, along with

¹ These also often govern the Accusative, especially of a neut. pron. or adj.

the Genitive of the person or thing toward whom the feeling is directed; as, —

puđet mē tui, I am ashamed of you (lit. it shames me of you).

Interest, Rēfert.

16. With interest (rarely with rēfert), the person concerned is denoted by the Genitive; as, —

patris interest, it concerns the father.

a. But instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, *mei, tui, etc.*, the Latin uses the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessive, viz.: *meā, tuā, etc.*; as, —

meā rēfert, it concerns me.

247.

VOCABULARY.

admoneō, ēre, uī, itus, I remind.

beneficium, ī (īī), n., kindness, favor.

contumēlia, ae, f., insult.

dēfectiō, ōnis, f., revolt.

etiam, also.

fūrtum, ī, n., theft.

genus, eris, n., kind.

imperītus, a, um, inexperienced.

interest, it concerns.

oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum, forget.

paenitet, it causes regret.

plēnus, a, um, full.

prīstinus, a, um, former.

EXERCISES.

248. 1. Plēna est vīta periculōrum. 2. Hūjus generis pugnae imperītī sumus. 3. Hārum contumēliarum meminī mus. 4. Helvētīī prīstinae suae virtūtis nōn oblīvīscuntur. 5. Tē meōrum beneficiōrum admoneō. 6. Hunc puerum fūrti accūsāmus. 7. Hūjus dēfectiōnis eōs paenitet. 8. Hōc rei pūblicaē salūtisque commūnis interest. 9. Vestrā etiam interest. 10. Vīta illius mulieris periculōrum plēna fuerat. 11. Pater filiōs suōs hōrum officiōrum admonēbit. 12. Nōnne beneficiōrum nostrōrum meministis? 13. Prīstinae dēfectiōnis oblīvīscāmur!

249. 1. The Helvetii were fond of war. 2. They remembered the valor of their ancestors. 3. We shall not forget your favors. 4. I remind him of our friendship. 5. Do you remember this? 6. We regret this war. 7. It greatly concerns you. 8. This will concern all the soldiers.

REVIEW.

1. Haec contumēlia meā intererat. 2. Amicōs tuōs hōrum verbōrum paenituit. 3. Bellōrūm hūjus modī imperitus fuit. 4. Satis pecūniae mihi nōn erit. 5. Fossa decem pedum prō castris erat. 6. Cēteri quī supererant milites levis armātūrae erant. 7. Incolae hūjus insulae Italiae proximī sunt. 8. Proximum diem colloquīō diximus. 9. Pax et amicitia omnibus civitātibus magnō ūsui sunt. 10. Tela et scūta Gallis fuērunt. 11. Eis militibus parcam quibus semper cōnfisus sum. 12. Hōc sermōne aliis facile persuāsit. 13. Hae recentēs victōriae senātui placuērunt.

CHAPTER XLII.

THE ABLATIVE

250. The Latin Ablative unites in itself three cases which were originally distinct both in form and in meaning; viz. —

The Ablative or *from-case*.

The Instrumental or *with-case*.

The Locative or *where-case*.

The uses of the Latin Ablative accordingly fall into Genuine Ablative uses, Instrumental uses, and Locative

USES.

GENUINE ABLATIVE USES.

Ablative of Separation.

251. The Ablative of Separation is construed sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition. The preposition is omitted especially with verbs of *freeing*, *depriving*, *lacking*, and with adjectives of similar meaning; as, —

cūris liberātus, freed from cares.

Ablative of Source.

252. The Ablative of Source is used with the participles *nātus* and *ortus*, to designate *parentage* or *station*; as, —

Jove nātus, born of Jupiter.

Ablative of Agent.

253. The Ablative accompanied by *a* (*ab*) is used with passive verbs to denote the *personal agent*; as, —

a Caesare accusātus est, he was arraigned by Caesar.

Ablative of Comparison.

254. 1. The Ablative is often used with Comparatives in the sense of *than*; as, —

patria mihi vitā cārior est, my country is dearer to me than life.

2. *Plūs, amplius* (more), *minus* (less), and *longius* (further), are often employed as the equivalents of *plūs quam, minus quam, etc.*; as, —
plūs decem hominēs aderant, more than ten men were present.

256.

VOCABULARY.

ā, ab, by, prep. with abl.
amplius, more.
amplius, a, um, great, glorious.
Catilīna, ae, m., Catiline.
commēātus, ūs, m., supplies.
dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., disagreement.
expellō, ere, puli, pulsus, I drive out.
genus, eris, n., stock, family.
locus, i, m., place; family.
nāscor, i, nātus sum, I am born.

obsidiō, ōnis, f., siege.
occidō, ere, cidi, cīsus, I kill.
possessiō, ōnis, f., possession.
repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsus, I drive back, repel.
septingenti, ae, a, seven hundred.
Ubiī, ōrum, m., Ubiī, a German tribe.
Usipetēs, um, m., Usipetes, a German tribe.
viginti, twenty, indecl.

EXERCISES.

256. 1. Caesar Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāvit. 2. Helvētiī finibus suis excessērunt. 3. Usipetēs propter dissēnsiōnēs possēssiōnibus suis expulsi sunt. 4. Hostēs Caesarem commēatū prohibuērunt. 5. Catilīna amplissimō genere nātus est. 6. Hic adulēscēns summō locō nātus est. 7. Hostēs ā militibus nostris repulsi sunt. 8. Nihil est hominibus cārius libertāte. 9. Amplius viginti vicī incenduntur. 10. In eō proeliō minus septingenti militēs occisi sunt. 11. Plūs quinque milia captivōrum ā Caesare occisi sunt. 12. Quō patre nātus es? 13. Nōs magnō timōre liberāvistī. 14. Hostēs ā finibus nostris reppulimus.

257. 1. The Germans were driven out of their villages. 2. We shall free our fellow-citizens from fear. 3. The Romans drove back the Gauls from the rampart of the camp. 4. We kept the cavalry away from the ford of the river. 5. Caesar was born of a most noble family. 6. More than a hundred towns were captured by Caesar. 7. What is nobler than friendship? 8. Is not virtue better than friendship?

CHAPTER XLIII.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

INSTRUMENTAL USES.

Ablative of Means.

258. The Ablative is used to denote *means* or *instrument*; as, —

Alexander sagittā vulnerātus est, Alexander was wounded by an arrow.

Under this Ablative fall the following uses: —

1. *Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, and their compounds take the Ablative; as, —

divitiis ūtitur, he uses his wealth (lit. *he benefits himself by his wealth*);

vītā fruitur, he enjoys life (lit. *he enjoys himself by life*).

2. With *opus est*, *there is need*; as, —

duce nōbīs opus est, we need a leader.

3. With Verbs of *filling* and Adjectives of *plenty*; as, —

fossās virgultis complēvērunt, they filled the trenches with brush.

Ablative of Cause.

259. The Ablative is used to denote *Cause*; as, —

multa glōriæ cupiditāte fēcit, he did many things on account of his love of glory.

1. So especially with verbs denoting mental states; as, *dēlector, gaudeō, laetor, glōrior, fidō, cōnfidō*; also with *contentus*; as, —

fortūnā amīcī gaudeō, I rejoice at the fortune of my friend (i.e. *on account of it*).

Ablative of Manner.

260. The Ablative with *cum* is used to denote *manner* ;
as, —
cum gravitāte loquitur, he speaks with dignity.

1. The preposition may be omitted when the Ablative is modified by an adjective ; as, —

magnā gravitāte loquitur, he speaks with great dignity.

Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

261. The Ablative (often with *cum*) is used to denote an *attendant circumstance* of an action or an event ; as, —

bonis auspiciis, under good auspices ;
magnō cum damnō, with great loss.

262.

VOCABULARY.

<i>adducō, ere, dūxī, ductus, I lead on, impel.</i>	<i>laccō, ere, laccavī, laccatus, I harass.</i>
<i>celeritās, ātis, f., speed.</i>	<i>nocturnus, a, um, at night.</i>
<i>cōficiō, ere, fēcī, factus, I exhaust.</i>	<i>opus, n., need, indeclinable.</i>
<i>dēditio, ōnis, f., surrender.</i>	<i>pervenio, ire, vēnī, ventum, I come, arrive.</i>
<i>detrimentum, ī, n., loss, damage.</i>	<i>ratio, ōnis, f., reason.</i>
<i>dignitās, ātis, f., dignity.</i>	<i>recipio, ere, cēpī, ceptus, I take back ; with reflexive sē, to retreat.</i>
<i>eruptio, ōnis, f., sally.</i>	<i>utor, ī, ūsus sum, I use.</i>
<i>grātia, ae, f., influence.</i>	
<i>inopia, ae, f., lack.</i>	

EXERCISES.

263. 1. Helvētīī inopiā omnium rērum adductī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad Caesarem mīserunt. 2. Equitēs portīs ēruptiōnem faciunt. 3. Hostēs equitēs nostrōs proeliō laccessere coepērunt. 4. Gallī vulneribus cōfectī sē recēpērunt. 5. Opus est celeritāte. 6. Montem multitudīne hominū

complēverunt. 7. Hōc eā ratiōne fēcit. 8. Tuā grātia, dignitāte, ope¹ uti volō. 9. Eādem celeritāte nocturnō itinere ad mare pervēnit. 10. Galli cum magnō detrimento repulsi sunt. 11. Helvētiī summā celeritāte ex finibus Gallōrum excessērunt. 12. Nāvēs his causis ad terram redire coāctae sunt.

264. 1. The soldiers had been exhausted by the long march. 2. We shall use the help of the Gauls. 3. The trenches were filled by the soldiers with large stones. 4. We shall need cavalry and infantry. 5. He spoke with great dignity. 6. From fear of danger the envoys withdrew from the camp. 7. The Helvetii were not contented with their narrow boundaries.

THE SIBYLLINE BOOKS.

Anus quaedam incognita ad Tarquinium rēgem quondam adiit, novem librōs ferēns, quōs² esse dicēbat ōrācula dīvīna. Tarquinius pretium percontātus est; anus multum poposcit. Rēx dērisit.

Tum illa trēs librōs ex novem combūrit; et rediēns³ idem pretium postulat. Tarquinius multō magis risit.

Anus iterum trēs aliōs librōs combūrit atque dēnuō rogāvit ut⁴ rēx trēs reliquōs eōdem pretiō emeret. Tantā⁵ cōstantiā victus rēx librōs mercātus est.

¹ In Latin the conjunction 'and' is often omitted between the last two members of an enumeration.

² quōs esse dicēbat: *which she said were*, lit. *which she said to be*.

³ rediēns: present participle of *redeō*; § 132.

⁴ ut rēx emeret: *that the king should buy*.

⁵ tantā cōstantiā victus: *conquered by so great persistency*.

CHAPTER XLIV.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

INSTRUMENTAL USES (CONTINUED).

Ablative of Accompaniment.

265. The Ablative with *cum* is used to denote *accompaniment*; as, —

cum comitibus profectus est, he set out with his attendants.

Ablative of Degree of Difference.

266. The Ablative is used with comparatives and words involving comparison (as *post, ante, infra, supra; superare, surpass*) to denote the *degree of difference*; as, —

tribus pedibus altior, three feet higher (lit. higher by three feet).

Ablative of Quality.

267. The Ablative, modified by an adjective, is used to denote *quality*; as, —

puella eximia forma, a girl of exceptional beauty.

1. The Ablative of Quality may also be used predicatively; as, —
est magna prudentia, he is (a man) of great wisdom.

Ablative of Price.

268. With verbs of *buying* and *selling*, price is designated by the Ablative; as, —

servum quinque minis emit, he bought the slave for five minae.

Ablative of Specification.

269. The Ablative of Specification is used to denote that in *respect to which* something is or is done; as, —

Helvetii omnibus Gallis virtute praestabant, the Helvetians surpassed all the Gauls in valor.

1. Here belongs the use of the Ablative with **dignus** and **indignus** ;
as, —

honore digni, *worthy of honor.*

270.

VOCABULARY.

ante, adv., *before.*

antecēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus,
I precede.

auctoritās, ātis, f., *authority, influence.*

dignus, a, um, *worthy.*

fidēs, ei, f., *confidence.*

nihilō, abl., *by nothing.*

paulō, abl., *by a little.*

post, *afterwards.*

solvō, ere, solvi, solutus, *I loose* ;
of ships, *unmoor* ; **nāvēs sol-**
vere, *set sail.*

superō, I, *I surpass.*

talentum, I, n., *a talent* (about
\$1200).

vēndō, ere, vëndidi, vënditus,
I sell.

EXERCISES.

271. 1. Ipse cum equitātū antecēdit. 2. Paucis ante diē-
bus profecti sumus. 3. Paulō post nāvēs solvit. 4. Ad-
versum proelium equestre paucis ante diēbus factum erat.
5. Haec civitās erat magnā auctoritāte. 6. Nihilō minus
Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur. 7. Hōs agrōs
sex talentis vëndidit. 8. Ille dignus est fidē. 9. Omnēs
dignitāte superat. 10. Turris decem pedibus quam mūnitiō
altior fuit. 11. Nōne hīc homō amicitia vestrā dignus est ?
12. Nēmō tē auctoritāte superat. 13. Galli cum magnā
manū hōc oppidum oppugnāre coepērunt.

272. 1. Caesar set out with four legions. 2. He returned
home with his brother. 3. A few years before, Caesar had
first come into Gaul. 4. A few years after, he returned to
Rome. 5. This plan is much better. 6. This house was
sold for ten talents. 7. Are we not worthy of the highest
honor ? 8. This man surpassed the rest in virtue. 9. The
enemy were superior in number.

CHAPTER XLV.

ABLATIVE (Continued).

Ablative Absolute.

273. The Ablative Absolute is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. In its commonest form it consists of a noun or pronoun limited by a participle; as, —

urbe captā, Aenēās fugit, when the city had been captured, Aeneas fled (lit. the city having been captured).

1. Instead of a participle we often find an adjective or noun; as, —

vivō Caesare, rēs pūblica salva erat, while Caesar was alive the state was safe (lit. Caesar being alive);

Centōne et Tuditanō cōsulibus, in the consulship of Cento and Tuditanus (lit. Cento and Tuditanus being consuls).

2. The Ablative Absolute may be equivalent to almost any kind of a subordinate clause in English, i.e. to a clause introduced by *when, as, since, if, though, etc.*

LOCATIVE USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

Ablative of Place.

A. Place where.

274. The place where is regularly denoted by the Ablative with a preposition; as, —

in urbe habitat, he dwells in the city.

1. But names of towns — except Singulars of the First and Second Declensions — stand in the Ablative without a preposition; as, —

Carthāginī, at Carthage; Athēnīs, at Athens.

B. Place from which.¹

275. Place from which is regularly denoted by the Ablative with a preposition; as, —

ab Italiā profectus est, he set out from Italy.

1. But names of towns and small islands stand in the Ablative without a preposition; as, —

Rōmā profectus est, he set out from Rome.

Ablative of Time.

276. The Ablative is used to denote the time at which or within which; as, —

quartā hōrā mortuus est, he died at the fourth hour;

stella Sātūrnī trīgintā annis oursum cōficit, the planet Saturn completes its orbit within thirty years.

THE LOCATIVE.

277. The Locative case occurs chiefly in the following words: —

1. Regularly in the Singular of names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, to denote the place in which; as, —

Rōmae, at Rome;

Corinthī, at Corinth (see § 22, 3).

2. In a few special words, as, —

domī, at home;

humī, on the ground.

278.

VOCABULARY.

Aprilis, e, adj., of April.

cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōctus, I collect.

conjūratiō, ōnis, f., conspiracy.

dēspērō, I, I despair.

Kalendae, ārum, f., Kalends (first of the month).

M., abbreviation for Mārcus, I, m., Marcus (a man's name).

Messalla, ae, m., Messalla (a man's name).

peditātus, ūs, m., infantry.

Pisō, ōnis, m., Piso (a man's name).

Rōma, ae, f., Rome.

tempus, oris, n., time.

tertius, a, um, third.

trīduum, i, n., three days.

vigilia, ae, f., watch (of the night).

¹ Place from which, though strictly a "Genuine Ablative" use, is treated here for the sake of convenience.

EXERCISES.

279. 1. Barbari, magnā multitudīne peditātis coacti,¹ ad castra vēnerunt. 2. Is, M. Messallā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, conjūratiōnem fēcit. 3. Hostēs, insidiis in silvis collocatis, adventum Rōmānōrum expectābant. 4. Athēnis morābāmur. 5. Rōmae erat magnus tumultus. 6. Rōmā in Galliam contendit. 7. Ā Gallia Rōmam trīduō redibit. 8. Tertiā vigiliā ē castris profectus est. 9. Eō tempore milites de suā salūte dēspērābant. 10. Kalendis Aprīlibus hās litterās misi. 11. Illā nocte insidiis Gallōrum reppererunt. 12. Hāc magnā classe āmissā, ad ōram Galliae statim rediit. 13. Rōmā Athēnās rediimus.

280. 1. In the consulship of Pompey and Crassus the Germans crossed the Rhine. 2. When these tribes had been overcome Caesar returned into winter quarters. 3. In these places were large forests. 4. He remained one day at Geneva. 5. We tarried at Athens. 6. From Athens we returned to Rome. 7. From Rome we hurried into Gaul. 8. We set out in the first watch. 9. You were consul in that year. 10. Within six years I shall be consul.

THE TROJAN HORSE.

Ducēs Graecōrum fātis repulsi equum aedificant instar² montis. In hōc virōs armātōs condunt. Ipsi Trōjā abeunt.

Trōjāni loca vidērunt dēserta. Itaque portās pandunt, exeunt, equum mirantur, quem dēnique intrā mūrōs dūcunt.

Nox erat et omnēs Trōjāni somnum placidum carpēbant, cum Graeci in equō inclūsi claustra laxābant atque ipsi exibant. Invādunt urbem somnō sepultam et Trōjānōs occidunt. Sic Trōja dēlētā est.

¹ Avoid translating the Ablative Absolute by the English Nominative Absolute. Find a natural English equivalent.

² *instar montis*: as large as a mountain; rhetorical exaggeration.

CHAPTER XLVI.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

281. 1. PLURAL ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

Adjectives, including Possessive Pronouns, are quite freely used as Substantives in the Plural. The Masculine denotes persons; the Neuter denotes things; as, —

dooti, *learned men*; **nostrī**, *our men*; **parva**, *small things*.

2. In the Singular, Adjectives are not often used as Substantives.

ADJECTIVES WITH THE FORCE OF ADVERBS.

282. The Latin often uses an Adjective where the English idiom employs an Adverb or an adverbial phrase; as, —

inviti *abeunt*, *they go away unwillingly* (lit. *unwilling*).

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

283. 1. The Comparative often corresponds to the English Positive with 'rather,' 'somewhat,' 'too'; as, —

senectūs est loquācior, *old age is rather talkative*.

2. So the Superlative often corresponds to the Positive with 'very', as, —

vir fortissimus, *a very brave man*.

OTHER PECULIARITIES.

284. 1. Certain Adjectives may be used to denote *a part of an object*, chiefly **primus**, **extrēmus**, **summus**, **medius**, **infimus**, **imus**; ¹ as, —

summus mōns, *the top of the mountain*.

2. **Prior**, **primus**, **ultimus**, and **postrēmus** are frequently equivalent to a relative clause: as, —

primus eam vidī, *I was the first who saw her*.

¹ In this use the Adjective precedes the Noun.

285.

VOCABULARY.

abēō, ire, ii, itūrus, *go away*.
 crēdō, ere, didi, ditum, *believe*.
 extrēmus, a, um, *extreme, end of*.
 gravis, e, *heavy, difficult*.
 hiems, is, f., *winter*.
 hortor, āri, ātus sum, *I exhort*.
 invītus, a, um, *unwilling*.

laetus, a, um, *glad*.
 nox, noctis, f., *night*.
 plērīque, aeque, aque, *most*.
 prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus,
I advance.
 respondeō, ēre, spondi, spōn-
 sus, *I answer, reply*.

EXERCISES.

286. 1. Caesar suōs hortātus est. 2. Plērīque haec crēdunt.
 3. Mihi pauca respondit 4. Invītus haec fēcī. 5. Laeti
 abiērunt. 6. Via gravior erat. 7. Numerus lēgātōrum
 erat maximus. 8. Usipetēs extrēmā hieme Rhēnum trānsi-
 runt. 9. Galli mediā nocte ex castris ēgressi sunt. 10. Galba
 primus prōcessit. 11. Plērōsque lēgātōs ab hōc colloquiō
 invītōs abeuntēs vīdimus.

287. 1. Our (men)¹ withstood the onsets of the barbarians.
 2. I said all these (things) in the senate. 3. He remembers
 many (things).² 4. Most (persons) heard this. 5. We
 glad(ly) remained. 6. I replied unwilling(ly). 7. Our
 (men) seized the top of the mountain. 8. In the last (part
 of the) summer we were informed of these things.³ 9. We
 were the first to set out. 10. The march was somewhat
 difficult.

¹ Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.

² See § 242, footnote.

³ The substantive use of neuter pronouns and adjectives is regularly confined to the Nominative and Accusative Cases; *rē* must be used here.

CHAPTER XLVII.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

288. 1. The Personal Pronouns as subjects of verbs are, as a rule, not expressed except for the purpose of *emphasis, contrast, or clearness*. Thus ordinarily : —

videō, I see;

amat, he loves.

But *ego tē videō, et tū mē vidēs, I see you, and you see me.*

2. The Genitives *mei, tui, nostri, vestri*, are used only as Objective Genitives; *nostrum* and *vestrum* as Genitives of the Whole. Thus : —

memor tui, mindful of you;

nēmō vestrum, no one of you.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

289. The Possessive Pronouns, as a rule, are not employed except for the purpose of *clearness*. Thus : —

patrem amō, I love my father.

But — *patrem tuum amō, I love your father.*

RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

290. The Latin has no special reciprocal pronoun ('each other'), but expresses the reciprocal notion by the phrases: *inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē*, or by the simple *nōs, vōs, sē*; as, —

Belgae obsidēs inter sē dedērunt, the Belgae gave each other hostages (lit. among themselves).

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Hic, Ille, Iste.

291. 1. Where *hic* and *ille* are used in contrast, *hic* usually refers to the latter of two objects, and *ille* to the former.

2. *Iste* frequently involves contempt: as, *iste homō, that fellow!*

Ipsæ.

292. 1. *Ipsæ*, literally *self*, acquires its special force from the context; as, —

eō ipsō diē, on that very day;
ad ipsam ripam, close to the bank;
ipsō terrōre, by mere fright.

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

293. 1. *Alius*, another, and *alter*, the other, are often used correlatively; as, —

aliud loquitur, aliud sentit, he says one thing, he thinks another;

alter exercitum perdidit, alter vëndidit, one ruined the army, the other sold it.

294.

VOCABULARY.

cēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus, I
yield, withdraw.

coniciō, ere, conieci, coniec-
tus, I hurl.

differō, ferre, distuli, dilatus,
I differ.

exitus, ūs, m., exit, passage.

fiducia, æ, f., confidence.

Institutum, I, n., institution.

laus, laudis, f., praise.

mereor, ōri, meritus sum, I
deserve.

misericordia, æ, f., pity.

premo, ere, pressi, pressus, I
press, crowd.

subeo, ire, ii, iturus, I approach.

EXERCISES.

295. 1. *Tua nostri fiducia mihi grāta est.* 2. *Multi vestrum laudem meriti sunt.* 3. *Misericordiā vestri movēbar.*
 4. *Hostēs in exitū portarum sēsē premēbant.* 5. *Galli institutis atque legibus inter se differunt.* 6. *Nostri ipsā multitudinē nāvium perterrēbantur.* 7. *Ipsa loci nātūra periculum repellēbat.* 8. *Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cessit.*
 9. *Hārum filiarum altera occisa,¹ altera capta est.* 10. *Alii tela coniciunt, alii vallum subeunt.*

¹ Supply *est* from the following *capta est*.

296. 1. I was touched by your recollection of me. 2. Part of us went away. 3. Your pity of us touched my father. 4. He was driven out by his own¹ fellow-citizens. 5. They had long contended with² each other. 6. We have long contended with each other. 7. Some fought with swords, others with javelins. 8. One was killed, another fled. 9. The one fled, the other was captured.

REVIEW.

1. Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs obsidēs inter sē dare jussit. 2. Eā ipsā nocte hic nōhilis captivus ad suōs fugit. 3. Ā suis interfectus est. 4. Nostri multitudine hārum nāvium perterriti sunt. 5. Alius nōs laudābit, alius culpābit. 6. Boni nōn sunt semper pulchri. 7. Prīmus proelium iniit et ultimus dēcessit. 8. Hae dissēsiōnēs civium nunc multō crēbriōrēs fuērunt. 9. Dē his rēbus extrēmā hieme certior factus es. 10. Decem equitēs Rōmāni plūs viginti Germānōs ā castris reppulērunt. 11. Hic minus bīduum morātī erāmus. 12. Minimā dīligentiā ūsus es. 13. Agricolaē his parvis agris contentī nōn erunt.

¹ *his own*: use the proper form of *suis*.

² Compare the fifth sentence in the Latin exercise.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

297. The Subjunctive is used in Independent Sentences to express something —

1. *As willed* — Volitive Subjunctive;
2. *As desired* — Optative Subjunctive;
3. *Conceived of as possible* — Potential Subjunctive.

VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

298. The Volitive Subjunctive has the following varieties: —

A. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

299. The Hortatory Subjunctive expresses an *exhortation*. This use is confined to the first person plural of the Present. The negative is *nē*. Thus: —

eāmus, let us go;

nē dēspērēmus, let us not despair.

B. JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

300. The Jussive Subjunctive expresses a *command*. The Jussive stands regularly in the Present Tense, and is used, —

1. Most frequently in the third singular and third plural; as, —
dīcat, let him tell.

2. Negative commands, i.e. *prohibitions*, are rarely expressed by the Subjunctive, but usually by means of *nōlī* (*nōlīte*), with a following infinitive; as, —

nōlī hōc facere, don't do this (lit. be unwilling to do)!

C. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

301. The Deliberative Subjunctive is used in *questions and exclamations implying doubt or indignation*. The Present is used referring to present time, the Imperfect referring to past. The negative is *nōn*. Thus:—

quid faciam, what shall I do?

quid facerem, what was I to do?

hunc ego nōn diligam, shall I not cherish this man?

- a. These Deliberative Questions are usually purely Rhetorical in character, and do not expect an answer.

302.

VOCABULARY.

accēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus, I draw near.

cōsuldō, ere, cōsulī, I settle.

cūrō, 1, I care for, take care of.

dēstetō, ere, dēstitī, I cease.

dīmittō, ere, misi, misurus, I let go.

disciplīna, ae, f., discipline.

mōs, mōris, m., custom.

nē, not.

retineō, ēre, ul, tentus, I retain.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, I take.

EXERCISES.

303. 1. *Mōrēs atque disciplinam majōrum retineāmus!*
 2. *Hanc occasiōnem nē dīmittāmus!* 3. *Omnēs proeliō dē-*
sistant! 4. *Haec cūrentur!* 5. *Ille accēdat!* 6. *Nōli*
discēdere! 7. *Nōlite, mīlitēs, officia vestra dēserere!*
 8. *Hunc virum nōn dēfenderem?* 9. *Quārē nōn hic cōnsi-*
dāmus? 10. *Quid sūmam!* 11. *Nēmō incolās hūjus*
insulae lacessat. 12. *Nōli tālia verba probāre!* 13. *Amī-*
cōrum meminerimus! 14. *Quid hic adulēscēns diceret?*
 15. *Hunc hominem nōn mīrer!* 16. *Omnēs amīci mei mē*
dēfendant!

304. 1. *Let us withstand the onset of the enemy!* 2. *Let*
us not abandon our duty! 3. *Let Ariovistus return home!*

4. Let the Germans not ravage the fields of the Gauls!
5. Were we not to keep the Germans away from Gaul?
6. Do not go away! 7. Do not join battle! 8. What are we to do?

THE HAUNTED HOUSE. PART I.

Erat Athēns domus spatiōsa, sed per silentium noctis sonus ferri et vinculōrum ibi audiebatur; mox apparēbat Idōlon, senex prōmissā barbā.¹ Manibus² catēnās gerēbat et quatiēbat.³

Hinc domus dēserta et illi Idōlō relicta est.

Vēnit Athēnās philosophus, Athēnodōrus, lēgit titulum, omnia⁴ docētur, ac nihilōminus domum conducit.

Ubi coepit⁵ advesperāscere, poscit stilum et lūmen; servōs suōs in interiōra⁶ dimittit; ipse ad⁷ librum animum et oculōs intendit.

¹ prōmissā barbā: with a long beard; § 267.

² Manibus: on its hands.

³ quatiēbat: shook them.

⁴ omnia: § 213, 3.

⁵ ubi coepit: when it began.

⁶ in interiōra: into the inner part (of the house).

⁷ ad: upon.

CHAPTER XLIX.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE — POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE — THE IMPERATIVE.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

305. The Optative Subjunctive occurs in expressions of *wishing*. The negative is regularly *nō*. The use of tenses is as follows: —

1. The Present Tense, often accompanied by *utinam*, is used where the wish is conceived of as *possible*.

dī istaec prohibeant, may the gods prevent that!
nō veniant, may they not come!

2. The Imperfect expresses, in the form of a wish, the *regret that something is not so now*; the Pluperfect, that *something was not so in the past*. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are regularly accompanied by *utinam*; as, —

utinam istud ex animō dicerēs, would that you were saying that in earnest! (i.e. I regret that you are not saying it in earnest);
utinam vēnisset, would that he had come.

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

306. The force of the Potential Subjunctive is expressed by the English auxiliaries *should*, *would*. Both the Present and Perfect tenses occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning, as, —

fortūnam facilius reperirēs quam retinērēs, you would find Fortune more easily than you would hold her.

1. The negative of the Potential Subjunctive is *nōn*.

2. *May* and *can*-Potentials are so rare that the student should not venture to use these auxiliaries in rendering the Latin Potential.

THE IMPERATIVE.

307. The Imperative is used in *commands, admonitions, and entreaties* (negative *nō*); as, —

ēgrederē ex urbe, depart from the city;
mihi ignōsce, pardon me;
valē, farewell.

1. The Present is the tense of the Imperative most commonly used.
2. Except with the Future Imperative the negative is not used in clauical prose.

308.

VOCABULARY.

<i>aestas, ſtis, f., summer.</i>	<i>intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctus, I know, understand.</i>
<i>āvertō, ere, verti, versus, I avert.</i>	<i>jūs, jūris, n., right, power.</i>
<i>cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūptus, I use up.</i>	<i>opera, ae, f., assistance.</i>
<i>dō, dare, dedi, datus, I give, render.</i>	<i>patior, i, passus sum, I suffer.</i>
<i>facilis, e, easy.</i>	<i>utinam, affirmative particle.</i>
	<i>vincō, ere, vici, victus, I conquer.</i>

EXERCISES.

309. 1. Haec suspiciō āvertātur! 2. Utinam pater meus haec intellegeret! 3. Utinam hanc aetatem in hīs operibus nō cōsūmpsissēmus! 4. Illi nō vincant. 5. Nēmō haec supplicia patiātur. 6. Hōc facilius videātur. 7. Auxilium ā tē nōn postulem. 8. Vestrō duci, militēs, operam date. 9. Cōsulēs summum jūs habentō. 10. Hī lēgātī laeti discēdant. 11. Quis haec cōsilia probet? 12. Velim hanc rem melius intellegere. 13. Relinquite hunc locum et domum redite! 14. Utinam opēā tuā ūsus essem!

310. 1. Would that we had better defended the lives and fortunes of our fellow-citizens! 2. May our country not suffer any harm! 3. Would that these soldiers were braver! 4. Would we had not abandoned our duty! 5. What would seem better? 6. I should scarcely believe this. 7. Defend, fellow-citizens, the common safety.

CHAPTER L.

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

311. 1. Clauses of Purpose are introduced most commonly by *ut* (*utī*), *quō* (*that, in order that*), *nē* (*in order that not, lest*), and stand in the Subjunctive; as, —

edimus, ut vivamus, we eat that we may live.

adjūtā mē quō hōc fiat facilius, help me, in order that this may be done more easily.

portās clausit, nē quam oppidānī injūriam acciperent, he closed the gates, lest the townspeople should receive any injury.

a. *Quō*, as a rule, is employed only when the purpose clause contains a comparative.

2. A Relative Pronoun (*quī*) or Adverb (*ubi, unde, quō*) is frequently used to introduce a Purpose Clause; as, —

Helvētīī lēgātōs misērunt quī dicerent, the Helvetii sent envoys to say (lit. who should say).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

312. 1. In all dependent clauses, the tenses of the Subjunctive usually conform to the so-called 'Sequence of Tenses.' By the Sequence of Tenses, Principal Tenses of the Indicative are followed by Principal Tenses of the Subjunctive, Historical by Historical.

2. The Principal Tenses of the Indicative are: Present, Future, Present Perfect, Future Perfect.

The Historical Tenses are: Imperfect, Historical Perfect, Pluperfect.

3. In the Subjunctive the Present and Perfect are Principal tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect, Historical.

Examples of Sequence.

PRINCIPAL SEQUENCE, —

- videō quid faciās, I see what you are doing.*
videbō quid faciās, I shall see what you are doing.
viderō quid faciās, I shall have seen what you are doing.
videō quid feceris, I see what you have done.
videbō quid feceris, I shall see what you have done.
viderō quid feceris, I shall have seen what you have done.

HISTORICAL SEQUENCE, —

- videbam quid facerēs, I saw what you were doing.*
vidi quid facerēs, I saw what you were doing.
videram quid facerēs, I had seen what you were doing.
videbam quid fecissēs, I saw what you had done.
vidi quid fecissēs, I saw what you had done.
videram quid fecissēs, I had seen what you had done.

4. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive denote incomplete action, the Perfect and Pluperfect completed action.

313.

VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Aquitānia , ae, f., <i>Aquitania</i> , a district of Gaul. | mōtus , ūa, m., <i>revolt.</i> |
| conjungō , ere, jūnxī, jūnotus, <i>I unite.</i> | nē , lest, that . . . not. |
| Crassus , I, m., <i>Crassus</i> (a man's name). | quō , in order that. |
| existō , ere, existi, <i>I arise.</i> | remaneo , ēre, mānui, mānūrus, <i>I remain.</i> |
| | ut , that, in order that. |

EXERCISES.

314. 1. Crassus in Aquitāniam proficiscitur, nē tantae nātiōnēs conjungantur. 2. Locum castris idōneum dēlēgit nē commeātū prohiberētur. 3. Caesar cum equitātū proficiscitur nē ullus¹ mōtus existat. 4. Nōnnūlli remanēbant ut suspiciōnem timōris vitārent. 5. Quō iter expeditius faceret, impedimenta reliquit. 6. Lēgātōs misit qui haec nūntiārent. 7. Castra in locis superiōribus posuit nē quis¹ ea oppugnāret.

¹ In Latin we regularly find **nē quis** = *in order that no (one)*; **nē ullus** = *in order that no, etc.*

8. Unam legiōnem reliquit, quae castra dēfenderet. 9. Barbarōs expulimus ut vōs timōre et periculis liberārēmus.
10. Oppidum mūnimus quō civēs hostibus facilius resistent.

315. 1. We did these (things) that we might be free.
2. We do these (things) that we may be free. 3. Caesar chose men to fortify the camp. 4. We put Galba in charge of the captives in order that none¹ should flee. 5. We fortified the camp with a trench in order that we might more easily defend it. 6. Caesar joined battle, in order that greater armies might not assemble.

THE HAUNTED HOUSE. PART II.

Prīmō tantum² silentium noctis; deinde Athēnodōrus sonum ferri et vinculōrum audit. Respicit atque videt imāginem dē quā audierat. Haec stābat et digitō innuēbat.

Sine morā Athēnodōrus lūmen tollit et sequitur.

Imāgō lentō gradū ibat, quasi vinculis gravis. Postquam in āream dēflexit, repente delāpsa Athēnodōrum dēserit. Posterō diē magistrātūs adit; eōs monet ut³ jubeant illum locum effodi. Inveniuntur ossa hominis catēnis innexa.

¹ Translate, *lest any*.

² *tantum*: lit. *only*; i.e. there was only.

³ *ut jubeant*: *that they bid*.

CHAPTER LI.

CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC. — RESULT CLAUSES. — CAUSAL CLAUSES.

CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.

316. 1. A relative clause used to express some quality or characteristic of an indefinite or general antecedent is called a Clause of Characteristic, and stands in the Subjunctive; as, —

multa sunt, quae mentem acuant, there are many things which sharpen the wits.

2. Clauses of Characteristic are used especially after such expressions as *est qui*; *sunt qui*; *nēmō est qui*; *finis est qui*; *quis est qui*; etc. Thus:—

sunt qui dicant, there are (some) who say;
nēmō est qui putet, there is nobody who thinks.

RESULT CLAUSES.

317. Clauses of Result are usually introduced by *ut* (*that, so that*), negative *ut nōn* (*so that not*), and take the Subjunctive. Thus:—

mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut perpauci prohibēre possent, a very high mountain overhung, so that a very few could stop them.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

318. Causal Clauses are introduced chiefly by the following particles: 1. *quod, quia, quoniam*; 2. *cum*.

319. The use of moods is as follows : —

1. *Quod, quia, quoniam* take the Indicative when the reason is *that of the writer or speaker*; they take the Subjunctive when the reason is viewed *as that of another*. Thus: —

Parthos timeo quod diffido copiis nostris, I fear the Parthians, because I distrust our troops.

Socrates accusatus est quod corrumpere juvenutem, Socrates was arraigned on the ground that he was corrupting the young. (Here the reason is not that of the writer but of the accuser. Hence the Subjunctive.)

2. *Cum* causal regularly takes the Subjunctive; as, —

quae cum ita sint, since this is so.

320.

VOCABULARY.

accidit, ere, accidit, it happens.

appropinquo, 1, I approach.

barbarus, a, um, barbarous.

commutatio, 6nis, f., change.

consisto, ere, consisti, I consist.

cum, because, since.

despicio, ere, exi, ectus, I despise.

juro, 1, I swear, take oath.

obsideo, 6re, sedi, sessus, I blockade.

paucitas, 6tis, f., fewness, small number.

quod, because.

quoniam, inasmuch as, conj.

renovo, 1, I renew.

scio, scire, solvi, soltus, I know.

sublevo, 1, I relieve.

tam, so (of degree).

unus, a, um, alone.

EXERCISES.

321. 1. Nemo erat qui non juraret. 2. Multi sunt qui haec sciunt. 3. Nulla via erat quae non obsideretur. 4. Caesaris adventu tanta commutatio rerum facta est ut nostri proelium renovarent. 5. Non tam barbarus sum, ut haec non sciam. 6. Caesar Gallis accusat quod ab eis non sublevetur. 7. Hoc acciderat quod Galli legionem nostram propter paucitatem despiciebant. 8. Quoniam Germani appropinquant, castra movēbimus. 9. Hostes acriter pugnaverunt, cum in una

virtute omnis spes salutis cōsisteret. 10. Nēmō erat qui redire vellet. 11. Caesar angustias obsēderat, ut hostēs ex finibus suis exire nōn possent.

322. 1. Who is there that¹ says these (things)? 2. These soldiers were so brave that they feared no one. 3. The enemy were so terrified that they fled into the forests. 4. This place was such that our (men) could easily defend it. 5. Inasmuch as these (things) are so, we shall remain in this place. 6. Because no one else was present, he accused us. 7. He accused you because (= on the ground that) you did not resist the enemy.

THE SWORD OF DAMOCLES.

Dāmoclēs, quidam ex assentatōribus Dionȳsīi, tyrannī Syracūsāni, opēs ejus et magnificentiam commemorābat. "Visne igitur" inquit "fortūnam meam experīrī?" Tum tyrannus jussit Dāmoclem in lectō aureō collocārī. Aderant unguenta et corōnae; mēnsae epulis exquisitis atque vinō instruēbantur. Dāmoclēs sibi fortunātus vidēbatur. Sed in mediō apparātū gladium super caput suum sētā equinā pendentem vidēbat. Itaque nē² manum quidem in³ mēnsam porrigere audēbat, atque tyrannum orāvit ut sibi licēret abire.⁴

¹ Observe that this is the relative *that*.

² *nē . . . quidem*, not even.

³ *in mēnsam*, toward the table.

⁴ *ut sibi licēret*, lit. *that it be permitted to himself*, i.e. *that he be permitted*.

CHAPTER LII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

TEMPORAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *Postquam*, *Ut*, *Ubi*, *Simul Ac*, etc.

323. 1. *Postquam*, *after* ; *ut*, *ubi*, *when* ; *simul ac* (*simul atque*), *as soon as*, when used to refer to a single past occurrence, regularly take the Perfect Indicative ; as, —

Epaminōndās postquam audivit vicisse Boeōtiās, 'Satis' inquit '*vixi*,' *Epaminondas, after he heard that the Boeotians had conquered, said, 'I have lived enough.'*

2. In English we often use the Pluperfect after the corresponding particles, but the Latin holds regularly to the Perfect.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *Cum*.

A. *Cum* REFERRING TO THE PAST.

324. *Cum*, when referring to the past, takes —

A. The Indicative (Imperfect, Historical Perfect, or Pluperfect) to denote *the point of time at which* something occurs.

B. The Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect) to denote *the situation or circumstances under which* something occurs.

Examples : —

INDICATIVE.

erās cōsul, cum mea domus ardēbat, *you were consul at the time when my house burned up.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

cum hōc dixisset, omnes abiērunt, *when he had said this, all went away.*

B. CUM REFERRING TO THE PRESENT OR FUTURE.

325. When *cum* refers to the Present or Future, it regularly takes the Indicative; as, —

tum tua res agitur, paries cum proximus ardet, your own interests are at stake when your neighbor's house is burning.

326.**VOCABULARY.**

animadvertō, ere, verti, versus, I notice.

cognōscō, ere, nōvi, nitus, I learn, become acquainted with.

comperiō, ire, peri, pertus, I find out.

cum, when, conj.

ēiciō, ere, ējeci, ējectus, I thrust out; sē ēicere, rush forth.

exeo, ire, ii, exiturus, I go out, go forth.

factiō, ōnis, f., faction.

postquam, after, conj.

quaerō, ere, quaesivi, quaesitus, I inquire.

simul ac (atque), as soon as.

subducō, ere, duxi, ductus, I withdraw.

ubi, when.

EXERCISES.

327. 1. Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar cōpiās suās in collem proximum subdūxit. 2. Caesar ubi id comperit, sē in Galliam recēpit. 3. Simul ac tē vidi, hōc sēnsi. 4. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, duae factiōnēs erant. 5. Caesar cum ex captivis quaereret, hanc causam reperiebat. 6. Cum ad id oppidum accessisset, pueri mulierēsque pācem petiverunt. 7. Ut equitatus noster sē in agrōs ējecit, hostēs ex silvis exiebant. 8. Cum veniēs, cognōscēs. 9. Postquam amicōs tuos ibi vidi, ad tē rediī. 10. Eō annō cum Cicerō cōsul erat hae insidiae compertae sunt.

328. 1. After Caesar had made the bridge, he marched into Germany. 2. When he had heard these (things), he went away. 3. As soon as I saw you, I entreated your help. 4. On that day when you spoke in the senate, very many were present. 5. When the Gauls had seen our (men), they fled into the forests.

CHAPTER LIII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (Continued).

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *Antequam* AND *Prusquam*.

A. WITH THE INDICATIVE.

329. *Antequam* and *prusquam* (often written *ante . . . quam*, *prus . . . quam*) take the Indicative to denote an actual fact.

1. Sometimes the Present or Future Perfect; as, —
prus respondēs quam rogō, you answer before I ask.
nihil contrā disputābō prusquam dixerit, I will say nothing in opposition, before he speaks.
2. Sometimes the Perfect, especially after negative clauses; as, —
nōn prus jugulandī finis fuit, quam Sulla omnēs suōs dīvitīs explēvit, there was no end of murder until Sulla satisfied all his henchmen with wealth.

B. WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

330. *Antequam* and *prusquam* take the Subjunctive to denote an act as anticipated.

prusquam tālum adīcī posset, omnis acīēs terga vertit,
before a spear could be hurled, the whole army fled.

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *Dum*, *Dōnec*, *Quoad*.

331. I. *Dum*, *while*, regularly takes the Present Indicative with the force of an Imperfect; as, —

Alexander, dum inter primōrēs pugnat, sagittā iotus est,
Alexander, while he was fighting in the van, was struck by an arrow.

II. *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, *as long as*, take the Indicative; as, —

dum anima est, spēs est, as long as there is life there is hope.

III. *Dum, donec, and quoad, until, take —*

1. The Indicative, to denote *an actual event*; as, —
donec rediit, fuit silentium, there was silence till he came.

2. The Subjunctive, to denote *anticipation or expectancy*; as, —

expectavit Caesar dum naves convenirent, Caesar waited for the ships to assemble.

332.

VOCABULAR.

adversarius, ii, m., adversary.

agō, ere, ēgī, actus, I do.

antequam, before.

commūnō, ire, ivi (ii), itus, strongly fortify.

Domitius, i (ii), m., Domitius (a man's name).

donec, until.

dum, while; as long as; until.

magistratus, ūs, m., magistrate.

Massilia, ae, f., Marseilles.

perficiō, ere, fēcī, factus, I accomplish.

priusquam, before.

silentium, i (ii), n., silence.

tamen, nevertheless, yet.

EXERCISES.

333. 1. Hunc collem occupat priusquam ab adversariis sentiatur. 2. Antequam haec perficerem, abiit. 3. Antequam ad causam redeō, dē mē pauca dicam. 4. Nōn prius fugā destiterunt quam ad Rhenum pervenerunt. 5. Dum haec inter eos aguntur, Domitius Massiliam pervenit. 6. Huic magistratui restiti, dum potui. 7. Donec rediisti, nos ibi remansimus. 8. Caesar expectavit dum haec mandata ad hostes perferrentur. 9. Haec dixit antequam nos videret. 10. Expectabimus dum ceteri amici nostri accedant. 11. Expectavi dum ceteri amici mei accesserunt.

334. 1. Before he set out for¹ Britain, Caesar fitted his ships out with all things. 2. We did not set out, before we informed you of our plan. 3. Before I set out, I shall inform the senate of my plans. 4. While the troops were assembling, Caesar consulted with the tribunes. 5. As long as Caesar was in Gaul, he was waging war. 6. We waited six days till you should come.

¹ *I.e. into.*

CHAPTER LIV.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

335. A Substantive Clause is one which as a whole serves as the Subject or Object of a verb, or denotes some other case relation.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES DEVELOPED FROM THE JUSSIVE.

336. These are generally used as object-clauses, and occur especially with the following classes of verbs: —

1. With verbs signifying *to admonish, request, command* (conjunctions *ut, nē*); as, —

postulō ut fiat, I demand that it be done (dependent form of the Jussive *fiat, let it be done!*);

orat nē abeās, he begs that you will not go away.

a. *Jubeō, command, order*, regularly takes the Infinitive.

2. With verbs signifying *to grant, concede* (conjunction *ut*); as, —
huc conōdō, ut ea praetereat, I allow him to pass that by (dependent form of the Jussive *ea praetereat, let him pass that by*).

3. With verbs of *deciding, resolving, etc.* (conjunctions *ut, nē*); as, —

dēcrēvit senātus ut Opīmius vidēret, the senate decreed that Opīmius should see to it (dependent form after an historical tense of the Jussive, *Opīmius videat, let Opīmius see*).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF HINDERING.

337. These are introduced by *nē, quōminus, or quā*, and take the Subjunctive; as, —

nē lūstrum perficeret, mors prohibuit, death prevented him from finishing the lustrum.

prohibuit quōminus in unum cōfrent, he prevented them from coming together.

339.

VOCABULARY.

Bôji , ðrum, m. pl., <i>Bôji</i> , an ancient tribe.	praecipîð , ere, cêpi, ceptus, <i>I enjoin.</i>
concedô , ere, cessi, cessurus, <i>I grant.</i>	quôminus , from (with verbs of hindering).
dêcernô , ere, crêvi, crêtus, <i>I decree.</i>	reddô , ere, reddidi, redditus, <i>I return, give back.</i>
imperô , 1, <i>I command.</i>	reiciô , ere, rejeci, rejectus, <i>I hurl back.</i>
itaque , accordingly.	restituô , ere, ul, âtus, <i>I restore.</i>
omniñô , at all (with negatives).	sequor , 1, secutus sum, <i>I seek.</i>
permittô , ere, misi, missus, <i>I permit.</i>	transportô , 1, <i>I set across.</i>

EXERCISES.

339. 1. Equitibus imperat ut hostibus terrôrem inferant. 2. Itaque Caesar suis praecêpit nê quod omniñô tælum in hostês reicerent. 3. Hâs civitatês hortâtur, ut populi Rômâni fidem sequantur. 4. Haedulis concessit ut Bôjôs in finibus suis collocarent. 5. Sêquanis permisit ut hôs obsidês redderent. 6. Dêcrêvimus ut hae legiônês Rhênum transportarentur. 7. Eôs prohibui nê excêderent. 8. Mê prohibuit quôminus haec restituerem. 9. Mihi persuâsit ut Massiliae manêrem. 10. Cicerô senâtum monuit nê haec pericula neglegeret. 11. Suis praecêpit ut proelium statim committerent.

340. 1. I commanded the soldiers¹ to attack this town. 2. Caesar commands the soldiers¹ to attack this town. 3. He commands them¹ not to cross the river. 4. Ariovistus permitted his cavalry¹ to ravage the fields of the Gauls. 5. The senate decreed that the soldiers should march forth. 6. We hindered the enemy from crossing this river.

¹ Use the Dative.

CHAPTER LV.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES (Continued).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES DEVELOPED FROM THE OPTATIVE

341. Here belong clauses : —

1. With verbs of *wishing, desiring*, especially *optō, volō, mālō* (conjunctions *ut, nō*) ; as, —

optō ut in hōc iūdicīō nēmō improbus reperiātur, *I hope that in this court no bad man may be found* (here *ut reperiātur* represents a simple optative of direct statement, viz. *nēmō improbus reperiātur*, *may no bad man be found*!).

2. With verbs of *fearing* (*timeō, metuō, vereor*). Here *nō* means *that, lest*, and *ut* means *that not* ; as, —

timeō nō veniat, *I fear that he will come* (originally : *may he not come* ! *I'm afraid [he will]*) ;

timeō ut veniat, *I fear that he will not come* (originally : *may he come* ! *I'm afraid [he won't]*).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT.

342. Substantive Clauses of Result (introduced by *ut, ut nōn*) are a development of pure Result clauses, and occur with the following classes of words : —

1. As object clauses after verbs of *doing, accomplishing*. Thus : —

gravitas morbi facit ut medicinā egeamus, *the severity of disease makes us need medicine* (lit. *makes that we need*).

2. As the subject of several impersonal verbs ; for example, *fit, it happens, efficitur, accidit*, etc. Thus : —

ex quō efficitur, ut voluptās nōn sit summum bonum, *from which it follows that pleasure is not the greatest good*.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

343. Indirect Questions are Substantive Clauses used after verbs of *asking, inquiring, telling*, and the like. They

take their verb in the Subjunctive. Like Direct Questions (see § 208) they may be introduced —

- a) By Interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs; as, —

dīc mihī ubi fueris, quid feceris, tell me where you were, what you did.

- b) By *num* or *-ne*, without the use of *ut*; as, —

Epaminōndās quæsitv nūn salvis esset clipeus, or salvus esset clipeus, Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe.

344.

VOCABULARY.

contrōversia, ae, f., controversy.

ēducō, ere, *dūxi*, ductus, I lead forth.

ita, so (of manner).

līgatiō, ōnis, f., embassy.

lūna, ae, f., moon.

optō, I, I desire.

ōratiō, ōnis, f., speech.

plēbs, is, f., common people.

praetereā, besides.

primō, first, firstly.

rescindō, ere, *scidi*, scissus, I tear down.

sic, so (of manner).

tergum, I, n., back.

vertō, ere, *verti*, versus, I turn; *terga vertere*, flee.

EXERCISES.

345. 1. *Optō ut haec ōratiō plēbi placeat.* 2. *Optāmus nē ullās contrōversiās habeamus.* 3. *Praetereā verēbātur nē hostēs pontem rescinderent.* 4. *Veritus sum ut legiōnēs ex castris ēducerentur.* 5. *Ita factum est ut hostēs statim terga verterent.* 6. *Sic efficit ut rēgem in potestāte suā habēret.* 7. *Eadem nocte accidit ut lūna plēna esset.* 8. *Ab hīs quæsitv quæ et quantæ civitatēs in armis essent.* 9. *Primō a tē quærō hūjusne līgatiōnis princeps sis.* 10. *Optō nē mē hīc inveniat.* 11. *Factum est ut eō diē in urbe remānsisset.* 12. *Eum rogāvi quid fēcisset.* 13. *Veritus sum ut hōc periculum a civibus meis āverterētur.*

346. 1. I fear that our (men) will flee. 2. Caesar feared that his (men) would flee. 3. We fear that the soldiers will

not withstand the onset of the barbarians. 4. We desire that you may be free. 5. It happened that ships were lacking. 6. We brought it about that you were informed of these things. 7. I asked the envoys what they wished. 8. I asked them whether the Germans had crossed the Rhine.

REVIEW.

1. Nōlite haec facere! 2. Quārē hīc diūtius manēamus? 3. Filii mandāta patris sui perficiant! 4. Timor mentēs vestrās nē occupet! 5. Quid aliud facerēmus? 6. Utinam tē vidissem! 7. Utinam hostēs nē adessent! 8. Nēmō haec crēdat. 9. Proficiscere ex hāc urbe! 10. Multōs labōrēs passus sum ut tē dēfenderem. 11. Hīc remānsī, quō auxiliō ejus diūtius ūterer. 12. Castella ibi collocāvit nē Galli suōs circumvenire possent. 13. Quis est quī haec dicere audeat? 14. Amīci mei tantā sunt diligentia ut nihil neglegant. 15. Hostēs simul atque signa nostra vidērunt, nūntiōs misērunt, quī pācem peterent.

THE BOY AND THE DOLPHIN. PART I.

Est in Āfricā colōnia, marī proxima; adjacet stāgnum, in quō puerī natant. Ille puer est victor quī aequālēs longissimē¹ relinquit.

In hōc certāmine puer quīdam cēteris² audācior in ulteriōra³ tendēbat. Delphīnus occurrit et nunc praecēdit puerum, nunc sequitur, nunc circumit; postrēmō subit prōfertque in altum; mox reddit terrae et aequālibus.

¹ longissimē: farthest behind.

² cēteris audācior: bolder than the rest; § 254, 1.

³ in ulteriōra: to a greater distance.

CHAPTER LVI.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. — CLAUSES WITH *quamvis* AND *quamquam*.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

347. Conditional Sentences are compound sentences consisting of two parts, the Protasis (or *condition*), usually introduced by *si*, *nisi*, or *sin*, and the Apodosis (or *conclusion*). We distinguish the following types of Conditional Sentences: —

348. First Type. — Nothing Implied as to the Reality of the Supposed Case.

Here we regularly have the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis. Any tense may be used; as, —

si hōc crēdis, errās, if you believe this, you are mistaken;
nātūram si sequēmur, numquam aberrābimus, if we follow
Nature, we shall never go astray;
si hōc dixisti, errāvistī, if you said this, you were in error.

349. Second Type. — 'Should' . . . 'would' Type.

Here we regularly have the Subjunctive (regularly the Present tense) in both Protasis and Apodosis; as, —

si hōc dicās, errēs, if you should say this, you would be mistaken.

350. Third Type. — Supposed Case Contrary to Fact.

Here we regularly have the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to *present time*, and the Pluperfect referring to *past*; as, —

si amici mei adessent, opus nōn indigērem, if my friends
were here, I should not lack assistance.

si hōc dixissēs, errāvissēs, if you had said this, you would have
erred.

CLAUSES WITH *quamvis*, *quamquam*, etc., 'although.'

351. 1. *Quamvis*, however much, although, does not introduce a statement of fact, but represents an act merely as conceived. It is followed by the Subjunctive, usually of the present tense; as, —

nōn est potestās opitulandī rei pūblicae quamvis ea premātur periculis, there is no opportunity to succor the state, though it be beset by dangers.

2. *Quamquam*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, although, introduce a statement of fact, and are followed by the Indicative (of any tense); as, —

quamquam festinās, nōn est mora longa, although you are in haste, the delay is not long.

3. *Cum*, although, is followed by the Subjunctive; as, —

mē nōn adiūvit, cum posset, he did not help me, though he was able.

352.

VOCABULARY.

animus, *ī*, m., soul, heart.

Atticus, *ī*, m., Atticus, the friend of Cicero.

cum, though.

honor, *ōris*, m., honor.

immortālis, e, immortal.

incertus, a, um, uncertain.

liber, era, erum, free.

mandō, *ī*, I assign.

mors, *mortis*, f., death.

nisi, unless.

opprimō, ere, pressi, pressus, I overwhelm.

pateō, ēre, patui, lie open.

prōvideō, ēre, vidi, visus, I provide, take care.

quamquam, although.

quamvis, though, although.

valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, avail, prevail.

vis, *vis*, f., violence; pl. *virēs*, *īum*, strength.

EXERCISES.

353. 1. *Mors nōn est timenda, si animus immortalis est.*
 2. *Si vim facere cōnābimini, vōs prohibebō.* 3. *Si ille nobis hōc negōtium mandet, quid respondeās?* 4. *Si auctoritās mea valuisset, nōs nunc liberī essēmus.* 5. *Rēs pūblica oppressa esset, nisi cōsul prōvidisset.* 6. *Si haec cōnsilia probārēs, laetus essem.* 7. *Atticus honorēs nōn petiit, cum ei patērent.* 8. *Rōmānī, quamquam vulneribus cōfecti*

erant, impetum hostium sustinēbant. 9. Quamvis victōria incerta sit, ducem nē dēserāmus. 10. Si ā castellō discesseris, ab hostibus interficiēris. 11. Nisi vēnissēs, omnia amississē-

354. 1. If the soldiers are of good heart,¹ there is hope of victory. 2. If you come² to Rome, you will see me. 3. If you should come to Rome, you would see us. 4. If you had told me this, I should not have set out. 5. If our fleet were at hand, we should wish nothing else. 6. Although boats were lacking, Caesar decided to cross the Rhine. 7. Though no one should come, I shall remain.

THE BOY AND THE DOLPHIN. PART II.

Serpit per colōniam fāma; concurrunt omnēs; puerum interrogant, audiunt,³ narrant.⁴ Posterō diē litus obsident, prōspectant mare. Natant puerī, inter hōs ille,⁵ sed cautius.

Delphīnus rursus ad puerum venit. Fugit ille cum cēteris. Delphīnus puerum invitāt et revocat. Puer iterum tergō insilit; fertur atque refertur. Neuter timet, neuter timētur.

¹ § 267.

² Observe that *come* really equals *shall come*. Hence the future must be used. In conditional sentences the English present often has the force of the future, and must be so rendered in Latin.

³ audiunt: *hear (his story)*.

⁴ narrant: *tell (the story to others)*.

⁵ ille: *i.e. the boy*.

CHAPTER LVII.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*Ōrātiō Obliqua*).

355. When the language or thought of any person is quoted without change, that is called Direct Discourse (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*); as, —

Caesar said, 'The die is cast.'

When, on the other hand, one's language or thought is made to depend upon a verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*, that is called Indirect Discourse (*Ōrātiō Obliqua*); as, —

Caesar said that the die was cast ;

Caesar thought that his troops were victorious.

MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

356. Declaratory Sentences upon becoming Indirect change their main clause to the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, while all subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive ; as, —

Rēgulus dixit,¹ quam diū jūre jūrando hostium tenērētur, nōn esse sē senātōrem, Regulus said that as long as he was held by his pledge to the enemy he was not a senator. (Direct: quam diū teneor, nōn sum senātor.)

TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

A. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

357. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time not absolutely, but *with reference to the verb on which they depend.* Thus : —

¹ The verb of *saying, etc.*, regularly precedes the Indirect Discourse.

- a) The Present Infinitive represents an act as *contemporaneous* with the time of the verb on which it depends; as, —

dicit sē facere, he says he is doing;

dixit sē facere, he said he was doing.

- b) The Perfect Infinitive represents an act as *prior* to the time of the verb on which it depends; as, —

dicit sē fēcisse, he says he has done;

dixit sē fēcisse, he said he had done.

- c) The Future Infinitive represents an act as *subsequent* to that of the verb on which it depends; as, —

dicit sē facturum esse, he says he will do,

dixit sē facturum esse, he said he would do.

B. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

358. These follow the regular principle for the Sequence of Tenses, being Principal, if the verb of *saying* is Principal; Historical, if it is Historical; as, —

dicit sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī vānerint, he says he sees the envoys who have come;

dixit sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī vānissent, he said he saw the envoys who had come.

359.

VOCABULARY.

adveniō, ire, vānī, ventum, I arrive.

arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, I consider.

existimō, 1, I think.

incolō, ere, uī, cultus, I inhabit.

inferior, us, inferior (§ 74, 2).

infirmus, a, um, weak.

modo, just, just now.

neque (nec), nor.

onerārius, a, um, burden-bearing;

nāvēs onerāriæ, transports.

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, rout, defeat.

posterus, a, um, following (§ 74, 2).

putō, 1, I think.

EXERCISES.

360. 1. *Existimō hās legiōnēs, quæ modo advēnerint, infirmās esse.* 2. *Neque arbitror hostēs sine injuriā transitūrōs esse.* 3. *Intellegimus maximās nātiōnēs à Cæsare pulsās*

esse. 4. Caesar intellēxit cōpiās quās habēret nōn esse inferiorēs. 5. Num putāvistis eōs quī hōs agrōs incolerent discessūrōs esse? 6. Posterō diē Caesar certior factus est nāvēs onerāriās, quās cōgisset, captās esse. 7. Nūntius dixit montem, quem Caesar occupārī voluisset, ab hostibus tenērī. 8. Nēmō putat hōc oppidum expugnārī posse. 9. Caesar arbitrābatur hās civitatēs sibi amicās esse. 10. Dixi eōs quī hanc Insulam incoluissent discessisse.

361. 1. It is reported that the Gauls are fortifying the hill which they have seized. 2. It is reported that the Gauls will fortify the hill which they have seized. 3. It is reported that the Gauls have fortified the hill which they have seized. 4. It was reported that the Gauls were fortifying the hill which they had seized. 5. It was reported that the Gauls would fortify the hill which they had seized. 6. It was reported that the Gauls had fortified the hill which they had seized.

CHAPTER LVIII.

THE INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

362. This may be used either as Subject or Object.

A. AS SUBJECT.

363. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Subject of *esse* and various impersonal verbs, particularly *opus est*, *necesse est*, *oportet*, *licet*, *puget*, etc.; as, —

dulce et decorum est pro patria mori, it is sweet and noble to die for one's country.

B. AS OBJECT.

364. 1. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Object of many verbs, to denote another action of the same subject, particularly after —

velo, *malō*, *nolo*;

dēbeō, ought;

statuō, *constituō*, decide;

cogito, *meditor*, purpose, intend,

audeō, dare;

vereor, *timeō*, fear;

and many others.

2. A predicate Noun or Adjective with these Infinitives is attracted into the Nominative; as, —

beatus esse sine virtute nemo potest, no one can be happy without virtue.

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

365. This may be used either as Subject or Object.

A. AS SUBJECT.

366. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative (like the simple Infinitive) appears as Subject with *esse* and Impersonal verbs, particularly with *fitile est*, *oportet*, *constat*, etc.; as, —

nil in bello oportet contemni, nothing ought to be despised in war (lit. nothing to be despised, is fitting).

B. As OBJECT.

367. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used as Object after the following classes of verbs:—

I. Most frequently after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like*. This is the regular construction of Principal Clauses of Indirect Discourse, and has received full illustration in the preceding chapter (171).

II. With *jubeō order*, and *vetō, forbid*; as,—

Caesar militēs pontem facere jussit, Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a bridge.

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

368. The Infinitive is often used in historical narrative instead of the Imperfect Indicative. The Subject stands in the Nominative; as,—

interim cottidie Caesar Haeduos frumentum sagitare,
meanwhile Caesar was daily demanding grain of the Haedui.

369.

VOCABULARY.

comparō, 1, I get ready.

cōstat, stare, statū, it is evident.

dispō, ere, posui, positus, I distribute.

jubeō, ēre, jussi, jussus, I order.

lapis, idis, m., stone.

licet, ēre, licuit, it is permitted.

nanciscor, 1, nactus sum, I procure.

necesse est, it is necessary.

oportet, it behooves; it is fitting.

opus est, it is necessary.

ordō, inis, m., rank.

pro, prep. with abl., for, in behalf of.

servō, 1, I preserve.

statuō, ere, ui, ūtus, decide.

EXERCISES.

370. 1. Opus est cōpiam frumentī nancisci. 2. Necesse est castra vallō mūnīre. 3. Nōn licet in urbem reverti. 4. Gallia libera esse debet. 5. Statui praesidia dispōnere. 6. Cōstat magnum numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse. 7. Hōs vicōs incendi oportet. 8. Caesar militēs jussit ordinēs servāre. 9. Jussit nāvēs comparari. 10. Hostēs ex omnibus partibus lapidēs in vallum conicere. 11. Hae legiōnēs ex hibernis egredi nōn ausae sunt. 12. Officium est militum Rōmānōrum

pro imperatore et patria fortiter pugnare. 13. Imperator nos jussit agros Sequanorum vastare.

371. 1. It was necessary to do many (things) at the same time. 2. It is necessary to be brave in battle. 3. We wish to be brave. 4. Endeavor to be good. 5. It behooves us to set out at once. 6. It is necessary (for) us to fortify this camp. 7. It behooves us to be brave. 8. I ordered you to summon the tribunes. 9. We ordered the messengers to be dismissed.

"IF YOU WANT A THING DONE, —."

Avicula est parva; nomen est cassita. Habitat in segetibus. Quaedam cassita, cum iret cibum¹ pullis quaesitum, monēbat eos ut² animadverterent, si³ quid novi fieret.

Dominus agri postea filium vocat. "Videsne?" inquit, "Hoc frumentum jam maturum est. Ideo amicos roga ut⁴ veniant atque nos adjuvent." Pulli hoc audiunt atque orant matrem ut se⁵ in alium locum portet. Mater jubet eos a timore otiosos esse. "Si enim dominus," inquit, "amicis fidit, cras seges non metetur."

Die postero igitur mater in pabulum volat. Sol fervet, dies abit, nec⁶ ulli amici ad dominum veniunt.

Tum dominus rursus ad filium, "Amici isti," inquit, "cessatores sunt. Prima luce affer falcēs et nos ipsi manibus nostris cras metemus."

Ubi mater ex pullis id audit, "Tempus," inquit, "cedendi⁷ et abundi."

Itaque cassita migravit et seges a domino ipso atque filio demessa est.

¹ cibum pullis quaesitum: to seek food for its young.

² ut animadverterent: to notice.

³ si quid novi: if anything new (lit. of new): § 236.

⁴ ut veniant: to come.

⁵ se: them, the birds.

⁶ nec ulli: and no (lit. nor any).

⁷ cedendi: to be withdrawing (lit. of withdrawing).

CHAPTER LIX.

PARTICIPLES.

372. 1. TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE. The tenses of the Participle, like those of the Infinitive, express time not absolutely, but with reference to the verb upon which the Participle depends.

2. The Present Participle denotes action *contemporary* with that of the verb. Thus:—

audiō tē loquentem = you ARE speaking, and I hear you;
audiēbam tē loquentem = you WERE speaking, and I heard you,
audiam tē loquentem = you WILL BE speaking, and I shall hear you.

3. The Perfect Passive Participle denotes action *prior* to that of the verb. Thus:—

locūtus tacēō = I have spoken and am silent;
locūtus tacuī = I had spoken and then was silent;
locūtus tacēbō = I shall speak and then shall be silent.

a. The Future Participle, as a rule, is not used except in the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

4. The absolute time of the action of a participle, therefore, is determined entirely by the finite verb with which it is connected.

5. Participles are often equivalent to an English subordinate clause, relative, temporal, causal, conditional, etc.; as,—

omne malum nascēns facile opprimitur, every evil is easily crushed at birth;

mente uti nōn possumus cibō et potione completi, if gorged with food and drink, we cannot use our intellects.

6. Often, too, the participle is equivalent to a coördinate clause; as,—

Ahāla Maelium occupātum interfecit, Ahala surprised and killed Maelius (lit. killed Maelius having been surprised).

373.

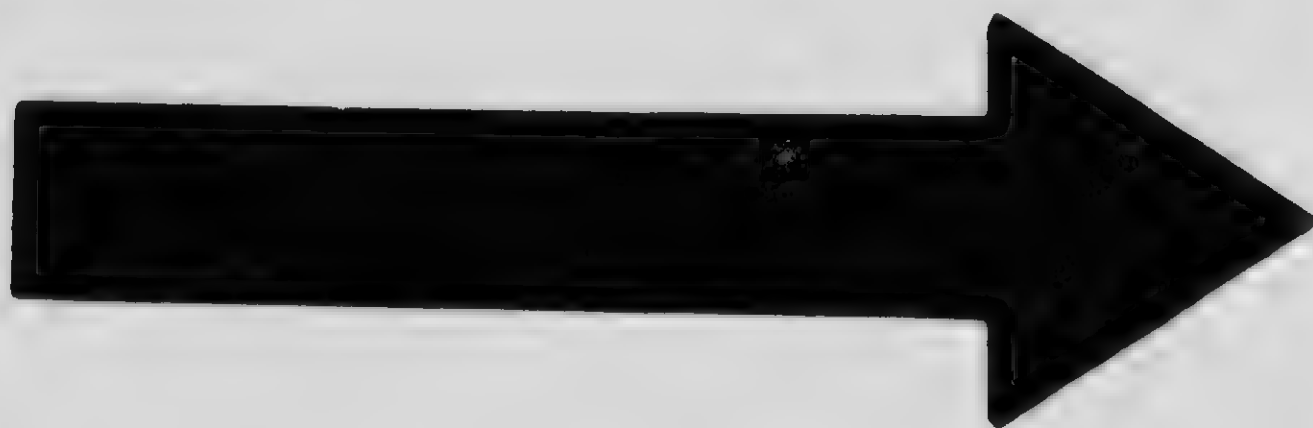
VOCABULARY.

Ardea , ae, f., <i>Ardea</i> , a Latin town.	Lysander , drī, m., <i>Lysander</i> , a Spartan commander.
cāsus , ūa, m., <i>chance, hazard</i> .	mūrus , ī, m., <i>wall</i> .
cernō , ere, <i>I perceive</i> .	oculus , ī, m., <i>eye</i> .
Conōn , ōnia, m., <i>Conon</i> , a Greek general.	perdō , ere, didī, dītus, <i>I lose</i> .
cōspiciō , ere, spēnī, spectus, <i>I see</i> .	persequor , ī, secūtus sum, <i>I follow up</i> .
dīrūō , ere, uī, tus, <i>I tear down</i> .	reficiō , ere, fēcī, fectus, <i>I rebuild</i> .
experior , īrī, pertus sum, <i>I try, test</i> .	submittō , ere, mīsi, mīsus, <i>I send, despatch</i> .
labōrō , ī, <i>I toil</i> ; in battle, <i>be hard pressed</i> .	Tarquīnius , ī (īī), m., <i>Tarquīn</i> , a Roman king.
	tueor , ērī, <i>I guard, watch</i> .

EXERCISES.

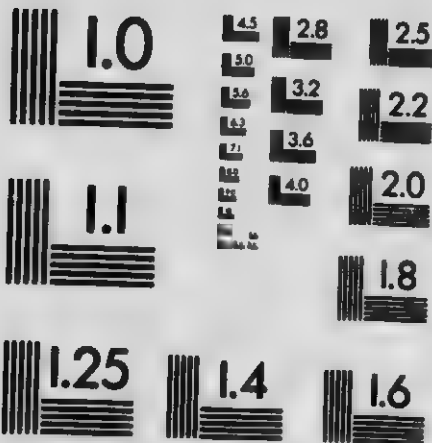
374. 1. Eis quōs labōrantēs cōspexit subsidium submisit. 2. Conōn mūrōs a Lysandrō dīrūtōs refēcit. 3. Tarquīnius Ardeam oppugnāns rēgnūm perdidit. 4. Virtūtem vestram multis proeliis expertus vōs nunc ad aliōs cāsūs vocō. 5. Oculus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit. 6. Caesar hōs pulsōs persequitur. 7. Turrim militibus tuendam trādīdit. 8. Milites jam vulneribus cōfectōs bonō animō esse jubet. 9. Nostri hostīs ex castris ēgredientēs adortī sunt. 10. Tarquīnius a populō ex urbe ējectus cum exercitū rediit. 11. Insidiās veritus dēcessit. 12. Hostēs castra minōra adorientēs vīdī.

375. 1. This soldier was killed (while) fighting in the first line of battle. 2. (Though) exhausted with many wounds, we did not abandon our leader. 3. When he had been summoned he came at once. 4. We put to flight the cavalry (who had been) driven back. 5. Caesar left these captives to be guarded.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

CHAPTER LX.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.—SUPINE

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

376. Of the four cases in which the Gerund occurs, only the Genitive, Accusative, and Ablative are in common use.

1. The Genitive admits the same constructions as nouns; as, —
cupidus audiendī, *desirous of hearing*.
2. The Accusative occurs only with prepositions; as, —
ad agendum nātus, *born for action*.
3. The Ablative is used both alone and with prepositions; as, —
mēns discendō alitur, *the mind is fed by learning*.
4. As a rule, only the Genitive of the Gerund and the Ablative (without a preposition) admit a Direct Object.

Gerundive Construction instead of the Gerund.

377. 1. Instead of the Genitive or Ablative of the Gerund with a Direct Object, another construction *may be, and very often is, used*. This consists in putting the Direct Object in the case of the Gerund (Gen. or Abl.) and using the Gerundive in agreement with it. This is called the Gerundive Construction. Thus:—

GERUND CONSTRUCTION.

GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.

cupidus urbem videndī , <i>desirous of seeing the city;</i>	}	cupidus urbis videndae;
dēlector ōrātōrēs legendō , <i>I am charmed with reading the orators.</i>		
		dēlector ōrātōribus legendis.

2. The Gerundive Construction *must also be used* to avoid a Direct Object with the Dative of the Gerund, or with a case dependent upon a Preposition; as, —

locus castris mūniendīs aptus, *a place adapted to fortifying a camp;*
ad pācem petendam vēnērunt, *they came to ask peace.*

3. The commonest use of the Gerundive Construction is with **ad** to denote purpose, as in the second of the two preceding examples.

THE SUPINE.

378. 1. The Supine in *-um* is used after Verbs of motion to express purpose; as, —

lĕgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum vēnērunt, envoys came to Caesar to congratulate him.

2. The Supine in *-ū* is used as an Ablative of Specification with *facilis*, *difficilis*, *incrēdibilis*, *jūcundus*, *optimus*, etc.; as, —

haec rēs est facilis cognitū, this thing is easy to learn.

379.

VOCABULARY.

ad, for (denoting purpose), prep. with acc.

administrō, 1, I perform.

aliĕnus, a, um, unfavorable.

causā, abl., for the sake of; the dependent genitive precedes.

cōnsector, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, I follow up.

effugiō, ere, *fūgī*, *fugitūrus*, escape.

explōrō, 1, I examine.

ōrātor, *ōris*, m., orator, envoy.

praedō, *ōnis*, m., robber.

reddō, ere, *reddidī*, *redditus*, I render.

spatium, 1 (11), n., space, time.

Themistoclēs, is, m., Themistocles, an Athenian statesman.

tūtus, a, um, safe.

versor, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, be engaged in.

EXERCISES.

- 380.** 1. Nulla fuit causa colloquendi. 2. Spatium sūmāmus ad cōgitandum. 3. Themistoclēs maritimōs praedōnēs cōnsectandō mare tūtum reddidit. 4. Caesar in his locis nāvium parandārum causā morātur. 5. Multī rēgēs bellōrum gerendōrum cupidī fuērunt. 6. Tempus ad proelium committendum aliĕnum fuit. 7. Ipse antecēdit ad itinera explōranda. 8. In his rēbus administrandis versābātur. 9. Pācem petītum ōrātōrēs mittit. 10. Hōc est optimum factū. 11. Hic locus ad pugnandum idōneus est. 12. Caesar hortandī finem fēcit. 13. Cum amicis dē urbe liberandā colloquēbāmur.

381. 1. (There) was no opportunity of withdrawing. 2. The envoys came for (the purpose of) conferring with Caesar. 3. By saying these (things) he made the soldiers more eager for fighting. 4. For the sake of saving the city we have given much¹ money. 5. He marches out from camp for (the purpose of) attacking this town. 6. No place is easier to approach.² 7. We have come to announce this victory.

REVIEW.

1. Ōrāmus ut finem dicendi faciās. 2. Veritus est nē omnia āmitteret. 3. Timēmus ut nobīs sit satis praesidi. 4. Tibi praecēpi nē haec officia neglegerēs. 5. Nobīs imperat ut tēla parēmus. 6. Accidit ut pauci incolumēs redīrent. 7. Optāmus nē quis effugiat. 8. Tē rogāvi quem locum dēlēgissēs. 9. Caesar Ariovistum rogāvit quam ob rem Rhēnum trānsiisset. 10. Si haec dixissēs, laetus fuisset. 11. Intellegimus omnēs hominēs nātūrā libertātem amāre. 12. Caesar intellegēbat quantō cum periculō id fēcisset. 13. Belli inferendi causā ā Galliā in Britanniam Insulam trānsiit.

¹ Use *magnus*.

² Use the proper form of *adeō*.

ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

ON

CHAPTERS III.-XXXIV.

CHAPTER III.¹

382. 1. You² summon the farmers. 2. We praise Galba's³ daughter. 3. Galba's daughters encourage the farmers. 4. He praises the troops. 5. The inhabitants of the island accuse Galba. 6. Galba praises the farmers.

CHAPTER IV.

383. 1. Dangers; by danger; of dangers. 2. To a friend; of friends. 3. The towns; of the town. 4. We farmers. 5. We attack the towns of the Sequani. 6. He is a friend of the farmers. 7. The troops avoid battle. 8. I entreat the help of the Germans. 9. He harasses the Gauls in battle.

CHAPTER V.

384. 1. Of great victories; by a great victory. 2. Many dangers; of many dangers. 3. To the Roman people; of the Roman people. 4. Many islands; many villages; many towns. 5. We get ready many beasts of burden. 6. We praise Galba, the Roman lieutenant. 7. Many Gauls and Germans contend in battle. 8. The beasts of burden are small.

¹ The chapter numbers correspond to those in the body of the book.

² Unless it is clear that the Plural is meant, *you* is to be regarded as the sign of the Singular.

³ *I.e.* the daughter of Galba.

CHAPTER VI.

385. 1. Of a high rampart; with a high rampart. 2. The great valor of the Roman soldiers. 3. To the father of the consul. 4. Of the cavalry; to the cavalry. 5. We praise Galba the consul. 6. Caesar demands many hostages. 7. The Roman soldiers contend with¹ the Helvetii. 8. The Gauls attack the rampart of the Roman camp.

CHAPTER VII.

386. 1. High trees; of high towers; in² deep rivers. 2. In the River Rhine. 3. The fears of the soldiers. 4. To the enemy; the camp of the enemy. 5. The cavalry of the enemy contend with the Romans. 6. Caesar establishes peace with many states. 7. The rivers are deep. 8. The cavalry of Caesar harass the enemy.

CHAPTER VIII.

387. 1. Of the senate; to the senate; concerning the senate. 2. In the harbors of the island; of the harbors. 3. Many hopes. 4. The remaining legions. 5. With the remaining legions Caesar attacks the town. 6. In the harbors are many islands. 7. The senate is in doubt concerning the loyalty of the legions. 8. He announces many things to the senate.

CHAPTER IX.

388. 1. Of the whole cohort; whole cohorts. 2. Of another hill; other hills; on other hills. 3. Of one battle; in one battle. 4. By a cavalry battle; of cavalry battles; in cavalry battles. 5. The soldiers contend without any hope of victory. 6. The legions attack another town. 7. We

¹ Unless *with* is equivalent to *by*, it is regularly to be rendered by *cum* in Latin.

² To denote location in a place, the Preposition is regularly necessary in Latin. The simple Ablative does not suffice.

avoid the dangers of another battle. 8. We are in doubt concerning many other things.)

CHAPTER X.

389. 1. In a fertile field; of fertile fields. 2. Of very many young men; with very many young men. 3. Of the common council; with noble envoys; in naval battles. 4. The young man is unharmed. 5. All the fields of the Haedui are fertile. 6. All the envoys of the Gauls entreat Caesar's help. 7. He praises all the tribunes of the legion.

CHAPTER XI.

390. 1. Braver soldiers; of braver soldiers; with the bravest soldiers. 2. The most difficult approaches; by the most difficult approaches; by a more difficult approach. 3. Of the first legion; with the first legion. 4. The larger camp; in the smaller camp. 5. The soldiers of the first legion attack the smaller camp. 6. We avoid the greatest dangers. 7. Galba is the bravest leader. 8. The approaches are most difficult.

CHAPTER XII.

391. 1. More fiercely; most fiercely; most courageously. 2. Most easily. 3. Of three cities, in three battles, two daughters. 4. With three hundred soldiers. 5. Two thousand cavalry. 6. The Belgians fight more bravely than the Sequani. 7. The Romans overcome the Gauls most easily. 8. We contend with three thousand Gauls. 9. Three hundred Romans retard the onset of the Gauls.

CHAPTER XIII.

392. 1. Of us; to you; to himself; to themselves. 2. My father; our father; our fathers. 3. Of your friend; of your friends; to my friends. 4. To this commander; of these

commanders; of these trees. 5. We call these soldiers to us. 6. With all these legions Caesar attacks the town. 7. No other commander blames his soldiers. 8. My daughter calls me.

CHAPTER XIV.

393. 1. The same causes; of the same armies; concerning the same duties. 2. That gate; of those gates; of those armies. 3. Of the slave himself; concerning the slaves themselves. 4. That slave (of yours); of those six slaves. 5. I call him; I call her; I call them; I call his¹ father; I call their¹ father. 6. The leaders of these armies are cowardly. 7. These duties are most difficult.

CHAPTER XV.

394. 1. A certain man; of certain men; concerning certain things. 2. Any cause you please; some causes; some men. 3. What man? What battle? 4. Of each army; concerning each slave. 5. This commander arms certain legions. 6. Betsy delights some soldiers. 7. What towns (do)² the soldiers attack? 8. They attack a certain town of the Belgians.

CHAPTER XVI.

395. 1. We were; we shall be; we had been. 2. I have been; he will have been; he will be. 3. You have been; you were; they will have been. 4. I have not yet been consul. 5. These consuls were cowardly. 6. Where had your father been? 7. He had been in the camp of the enemy. 8. We have been in many towns of the Gauls. 9. Before this camp was a deep trench.

¹ I.e. 'the father of him,' 'the father of them'; *suns* cannot be used; § 87, 1.

² This word is not to be translated.

CHAPTER XVII.

396. 1. Let them be; I should have been; they would have been. 2. To have been; be thou; they shall be. 3. May he be; he would have been. 4. May there be friendship between you and me. 5. May we be happy. 6. Let this law be brief. 7. I should have been glad. 8. Under another leader the soldiers would have been braver.

CHAPTER XVIII.

397. 1. I have summoned you; I was summoning you. 2. You summoned me; we shall summon you; they had summoned you. 3. We praised him; they had praised him; I was praising him. 4. The soldiers will fight; they have fought; we have fought. 5. Caesar had got ready many ships. 6. He will station two legions in that place. 7. I have not yet approved these plans. 8. Who had approved those words?

CHAPTER XIX.

398. 1. Let the soldiers contend; the soldiers would have contended. 2. To have contended; about to contend; by contending. 3. May he approve our words; he would have approved your words. 4. Who would have praised this man? 5. The soldiers try to seize that hill. 6. Praise all these soldiers. 7. We are about to attack another town. 8. All the Gauls are fond of fighting.

CHAPTER XX.

399. 1. We shall be praised; we have been praised; we had been praised. 2. She was praised; she will be praised; she had been praised. 3. You are expected; you will be expected; they will be expected. 4. Who was being praised? 5. All these towns will be attacked. 6. The Gauls had often been overcome. 7. These six ships have been got ready. 8. On the following day many soldiers were wounded.

CHAPTER XXI.

400. 1. Let them be called together; they would have been called together. 2. The senate must be (= is to be) called together at once. 3. We should easily have been overcome. 4. You would scarcely have been praised. 5. These towns would have been taken by storm most easily. 6. Your words would not have been approved. 7. The onset of the enemy must be retarded.

CHAPTER XXII.

401. 1. We have seen you; we shall see you; he had seen you. 2. We were fearing; you had feared; he will fear. 3. To have feared, to have seen; fearing, seeing. 4. May he have; we should have had; he shall have. 5. You ought to remain in this place. 6. We had seen the standards of the enemy. 7. We should easily have kept the enemy away.

CHAPTER XXIII.

402. 1. We seem; he seemed; you had seemed. 2. They will be terrified; we had been terrified. 3. Your suspicions were increased. 4. The camp had been moved. 5. Our soldiers seem to have filled up the trench of the enemy. 6. The onset of the barbarians will be bravely withstood. 7. The Gauls must be kept away. 8. These trenches would have been quickly filled up.

CHAPTER XXIV.

403. 1. We defended the city; they had defended the city; they will defend the city. 2. I sent a letter; we shall send a letter; they had sent a letter. 3. Let us defend; we should have defended; let him defend. 4. To send; to have sent. 5. I shall leave a garrison in this place. 6. Caesar sent two legions into Spain. 7. He had decided to defend the camp. 8. We waged war in Gaul.

CHAPTER XXV.

404. 1. Hostages had been sent; hostages will be sent; hostages have been sent. 2. We shall be defended; he had been defended; she had been defended. 3. These legions have been led to the other camp. 4. A garrison has been left here. 5. You would have been compelled to remain. 6. Many wars will be waged. 7. Two legions were sent against the enemy. 8. These ships will be fitted out with all things.

CHAPTER XXVI.

405. 1. We were fortifying; we have fortified; they will fortify. 2. They were assembling; they have assembled; they would have assembled. 3. He came; he will have come; let him come. 4. Fortify this camp, soldiers!¹ 5. The enemy hindered the march of our army!² 6. The Germans assembled on all sides from the forests. 7. We have heard the report of that battle. 8. I afterwards discovered these things.

CHAPTER XXVII.

406. 1. We were surrounded; they had been surrounded; they will be surrounded. 2. He was heard; we had been heard; she will be heard. 3. Let him be heard; they would have been heard; to be heard. 4. These captives were surrounded with two cohorts of soldiers. 5. Nothing has been discovered. 6. No other voice will be heard. 7. The larger camp ought to be fortified.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

407. 1. We were taking; I had taken; they will take. 2. Let us take; let him take; taking. 3. They would have

¹ The Vocative ordinarily stands second in the sentence.
² Use *agmen*.

fled; he would have been killed. 4. They will be killed; they were killed. 5. Let us make a bridge! 6. This camp was plundered. 7. The envoys of the king were received. 8. We received your commands. 9. We shall flee from these dangers.

CHAPTER XXIX.

408. 1. He was marching forth; they marched forth; let us march forth. 2. We ought to return. 3. We have tarried; you were tarrying; they had tarried. 4. I set out; he will set out; they would have set out. 5. No one dared to march forth. 6. We have not yet endeavored to send this letter. 7. Who will dare to resist? 8. The troops advanced a little. 9. We shall return.

CHAPTER XXX.

409. 1. We had been about to speak. 2. The soldiers were on the point of attacking (= were about to attack) this town. 3. She was about to set out. 4. That camp must be defended. 5. Peace must be established with other states. 6. Our liberty must be defended. 7. He was about to wage war. 8. We were on the point of surrendering ourselves.¹

CHAPTER XXXI.

410. 1. He could;² they could; you can. 2. He will be able; they had been able; may he be able. 3. We should have been able; to have been able. 4. He was in charge; I had been in charge; they will be in charge. 5. We were absent; they would have been absent; to have been present. 6. Much³ money had already been given. 7. We shall give much money to you. 8. He would have given much money to you.

¹ See § 86.

² I.e. he was able.

³ For much money, the Latin regularly has *great money*.

CHAPTER XXXII.

411. 1. We bore; we have borne; he had borne. 2. He would have borne; by bearing; to have borne. 3. Let us bear; we were bearing; they will bear. 4. Let us endure; to have endured; enduring. 5. The standards were brought back. 6. The Helvetii betook themselves to the mountain. 7. We shall bear assistance to you.¹ 8. Who will be able to endure these tortures?

CHAPTER XXXIII.

412. 1. We wished; we should have wished; to have wished. 2. I had been unwilling; you were unwilling; you are unwilling. 3. To have preferred; he would have preferred; he had preferred. 4. We had become; may he become; they would have become. 5. He had been unwilling to withdraw. 6. Caesar had been informed of (= concerning) this thing. 7. No one preferred to remain here.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

413. 1. We were returning; we should have returned; to have returned; they will cross. 2. They had crossed; they crossed; he will cross. 3. You will remember; they were remembering; we hate; let us hate; he hated. 4. I had begun to cross the river. 5. Two thousand cavalry² perished. 6. The cavalry of the enemy went around the camp of the Romans. 7. This river is crossed³ by a ford. 8. The soldiers will return.

¹ Use the Dative.

² See § 80, 4.

³ See § 197, 1.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

I. FABLES.

THE WOMAN AND THE HEN.

414. Mulier quaedam habebat gallinam, quae ei cottidie ovum pariebat aureum. Hinc suspicari¹ coepit,² illam auri massam intus celare,³ et gallinam occidit. Sed nihil in ea repperit, nisi quod in aliis gallinis reperiri⁴ solet. Itaque dum maioribus⁵ divitis⁶ inhiat,⁷ etiam minores⁸ perdidit.

THE OXEN.

415. In eodem prato pascebantur tres⁹ boves in maximam concordiam, et sic ab omni ferarum incursione¹⁰ tuti erant. Sed dissidio¹¹ inter illos orto, singuli a feris¹² petiti et laniati sunt. Fabula docet, quantum boni¹³ sit¹⁴ in concordia.

THE DOG IN THE MANGER.

416. Canis jacebat in praesaepi bovesque latrandō¹⁵ a pabulo¹⁶ arcebat. Cui unus boum,¹⁷ "*Quanta ista,*" inquit, "*invidia est, quod non pateris ut eo cibo¹⁸ vescamur,*"¹⁹ quem tu ipse capere nec velis nec possis!"

Haec fabula invidiae²⁰ indolem declarat.

The footnotes refer to the sections of this book.

¹ 364.

² 198.

³ 358.

⁴ 364.

⁵ 73.

⁶ 220, III.

⁷ 331, I.

⁸ 73.

⁹ 80, 2.

¹⁰ 251.

¹¹ 273.

¹² 253.

¹³ 236.

¹⁴ 343.

¹⁵ 376, 3.

¹⁶ 251.

¹⁷ 236.

¹⁸ 258, 1.

¹⁹ 336, 2.

²⁰ 233.

THE TRAVELLERS AND THE ASS.

417. Duo qui unā iter faciēbant, asinum oberrantem in solitudine cōspicātī,¹ accurrunt laeti,² et uterque eum sibi vindicare³ coepit, quod eum prior⁴ cōspexisset.⁵ Dum vēro contendunt⁶ et rixantur, nec a verberibus⁷ abinent, asinus aufūgit et neuter eō⁸ potitur.

THE KID AND THE WOLF.

418. Haedus, stāns in tēctō domūs, lupō⁹ praetereuntī¹⁰ maledixit. Cui lupus, "Nōn tū," inquit, "*sed tēctum mihi maledicīt.*"

Saepe locus et tempus hominēs¹¹ timidōs audācēs¹² reddit.

THE PEASANT AND THE MOUSE.

419. Mūs a rusticō¹³ dēprehēsus tam acri morsū¹⁴ ejus digitōs vulnerāvit, ut ille eum dīmitteret,¹⁵ dicēns: "*Nihil, mehercule, tam pusillum est, quod dē salūte dēspērāre dēbeat,*¹⁶ *modo sē dēfendere velit.*"

THE WOLF AND THE CRANE.

420. In faucibus lupī os inhaeserat. Mercēde¹⁷ igitur cōducit gruem, qui illud extrahat.¹⁸ Hōc grūs longitudine¹⁹ colli facile effēcit. Cum autem mercēdem postulāret,²⁰ subridēns lupus et dentibus²¹ infrendēns, "Num tibi," inquit, "*parva mercēs vidētur, quod caput incolume ex lupī faucibus extrāxistī?*"

THE TRUMPETER.

421. Tubicen ab hostibus captus,²² "Nōlīte²³" mē, inquit, "*interficere; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habēō praeter hanc tubam.*" At hostēs, "Propter hōc ipsum," inquiunt, "tē

¹ 172.
² 282.
³ 304.
⁴ 284, 2.
⁵ 319.
⁶ 351, 1.

⁷ 251.
⁸ 258, 1.
⁹ 220, II, a.
¹⁰ 197.
¹¹ 209.
¹² 209, 2.

¹³ 253.
¹⁴ 258.
¹⁵ 317.
¹⁶ 317.
¹⁷ 268.
¹⁸ 311, 2.

¹⁹ 258.
²⁰ 324, B.
²¹ 258.
²² 372, 5.
²³ 300, 2.

interimēmus, quod, cum ipse pugnandī¹ sis² imperitus, aliōs ad pugnam incitāre³ solēs.⁴"

Fābula docet, nōn solum maleficōs esse pūniendōs⁵ sed etiam eōs, qui aliōs ad male faciendum⁶ irritent.⁷

THE FARMER AND HIS SONS.

422. Agricola senex, cum mortem sibi⁸ appropinquāre⁹ sentiret,¹⁰ filiōs convocāvit, quōs,¹¹ ut fieri¹² solet, interdum discordāre¹³ nōverat, et fascem virgulārum afferri¹⁴ jubet. Quibus¹⁵ allātis, filiōs hortātur, ut hunc fascem frangerent.¹⁶ Quod cum facere nōn possent,¹⁷ distribuit singulās virgās, eisque¹⁸ celeriter frāctis, docuit illōs, quam firmā rēs¹⁹ esset²⁰ concordia, quamque imbecillis discordia.

THE MICE.

423. Mūrēs aliquandō habuērunt cōsiliū, quō modō a fēle cavērent.²¹ Multis aliis²² prōpositis, omnibus²³ placuit²⁴ ut ei²⁵ tintinnābulum annecterētur²⁶; sic enim ipsōs sonitū²⁷ admonitōs eam fugere²⁸ posse.²⁹ Sed cum jam inter mūrēs quaereretur,³⁰ qui fēli³¹ tintinnābulum annecteret,³² nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet, in suādendō plurimōs esse³³ audācēs,³⁴ sed in ipsō periculō timidōs.

THE TORTOISE AND THE EAGLE.

424. Testūdō aquilam magnopere orābat, ut sēsē volāre doceret.³⁵ Aquila ei ostendēbat quidem, eam rem petere³⁶ nātūrae³⁷ suae contrāriam; sed illa nihilō³⁸ minus instābat, et obsecrābat

¹ 376, 1; 241.

² 351, 3.

³ 364.

⁴ 319.

⁵ 356.

⁶ 376, 2.

⁷ 356.

⁸ 220, III.

⁹ 356.

¹⁰ 324, B.

¹¹ 356.

¹² 193.

¹³ 356.

¹⁴ 367, II.

¹⁵ 273.

¹⁶ 336, 1.

¹⁷ 324, B.

¹⁸ 273.

¹⁹ 24, 1.

²⁰ 343.

²¹ 343.

²² 273.

²³ 220, II, a.

²⁴ 202.

²⁵ 220, III.

²⁶ 336, 3.

²⁷ 258.

²⁸ 364.

²⁹ 356.

³⁰ 324, B.

³¹ 220, III.

³² 343.

³³ 356.

³⁴ 32, 1; 2.

³⁵ 336, 1.

³⁶ 356.

³⁷ 228.

³⁸ 266.

aquilam, ut se¹ volucrem² facere³ vellet.⁴ Itaque unguis⁵ arreptam⁶ aquila sustulit in sublime, et demisit illam, ut per aërem ferrètur.⁷ Tum in saxa incidens comminuta⁸ interiit.

Haec fabula docet, multos cupiditatibus⁹ suis occaecatos consilia prudentiorum respuere,¹⁰ et in exitium ruere stultitiâ¹¹ suâ.¹²

THE LION.

425. Societatem junxerant leo, juvenca, capra, ovis. Praedâ¹³ autem, quam ceperant, in quattuor partes aequales divisâ, leo, "Prima," ait, "mea est; debetur enim haec praestantiae meae. Tollam et secundam, quam meretur robur meum. Tertiam vindicat sibi egregius labor meus. Quartam qui sibi arrogare voluerit, is sciat,¹⁴ se habiturum me inimicum sibi."¹⁵ Quid facerent¹⁶ imbecilles bestiae, aut quae sibi leonem infestum habere¹⁷ vellet?¹⁸

II. ROMAN HISTORY.

1. The Regal Period, 753-510 B.C.

SATURN.

426. Antiquissimis temporibus¹⁹ Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicitur. Ibi haud procul a Janiculo arcem condidit, eamque²⁰ Saturniam²¹ appellavit. Hic Italos²² primus²³ agriculturam²⁴ docuit.

LATINUS AND AENEAS.

427. Postea Latinus in illis regionibus imperavit. Sub hoc rege Troja in Asiaversa est. Hinc Aeneas, Anchisae filius, cum multis Trojanis, quibus²⁵ ferrum Graecorum pepercerat,

¹ 209.
² 209, 2.
³ 364.
⁴ 336, 1.
⁵ 258.
⁶ 372, 6.

⁷ 311.
⁸ 372, 6.
⁹ 258.
¹⁰ 356.
¹¹ 259.
¹² 90, footnote 2.

¹³ 273.
¹⁴ 300.
¹⁵ 228.
¹⁶ 301.
¹⁷ 364.
¹⁸ 276.

¹⁹ 209.
²⁰ 209.
²¹ 213.
²² 284, 2.
²³ 213.
²⁴ 220, II, a.

aufugit et in Italiam pervēnit. Ibi Latinus rēx ei benignē receptō fliam Lāviniam in mātrimonium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam¹ in honōrem conjugis Lāvinium² appellāvit.

FOUNDING OF ALBA LONGA BY ASCANIUS.

428. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, rēgnum accēpit. Hic sēdem rēgni in alium locum trānstulit, urbemque condidit in monte Albānō, eamque Albam Longam nuncupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, qui post Aenēae mortem ā Lāvinia³ genitus erat. Ejus posterī omnēs usque ad Rōmam conditam Albae⁴ rēgnāverunt.

OTHER KINGS OF ALBA.

429. Unus hōrum rēgum,⁵ Rōmulus Silvius, sē Jove⁶ majōrem⁷ esse⁸ dicēbat, et, cum tonāret,⁹ militibus¹⁰ imperāvit, ut clipeōs hastis¹¹ percuterent,¹² dicēbatque hunc sonum multō¹³ clārīōrem¹⁴ esse¹⁵ quam tonitrum. Fulmine¹⁶ ictus et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

Silvius Procās, rēx Albānōrum, duōs filiōs reliquit Numitōrem et Amūlium. Hōrum minor nātū,¹⁷ Amūlius, frātrī optiōnem dedit, utrum rēgnum habēre¹⁸ vellet,¹⁹ an bona, quae pater reliquisset.²⁰ Numitor paterna bona praetulit; Amūlius rēgnum obtinuit.

BIRTH OF ROMULUS AND REMUS.

430. Amūlius, ut rēgnum firmissimē possidēret,²¹ Numitōris filium per insidiās interēmit et filiam frātris Rheam Silviam²² Vestālem virginem²³ fēcit. Nam hīs Vestae sacerdotibus²⁴

¹ 209.⁷ 32, 1; 2.¹³ 266.¹⁹ 343.² 209.⁸ 356.¹⁴ 32, 1; 2.²⁰ 356.³ 252.⁹ 324, B.¹⁵ 356.²¹ 311.⁴ 277.¹⁰ 220, II, a.¹⁶ 258.²² 209.⁵ 236.¹¹ 258.¹⁷ 269.²³ 209.⁶ 254.¹² 336, 1.¹⁸ 364.²⁴ 220, II, a.

non licet virō¹ nūbere.² Sed haec a Mārte geminōs filiōs, Rōmulum et Remum, peperit. Hōc cum Amūlius comperisset,³ mātrem in vincula conjecit, puerōs⁴ autem in Tiberim⁵ abici⁶ jussit.

431. Forte Tiberis aqua ultrā ripam sē effūderat, et, cum puerī in vadō essent positi,⁷ aqua refruēns eōs in siccō reliquit. Ad eōrum vāgitum lupa accurrit, eōsque ūberibus⁸ suis aluit. Quod vidēns Faustulus quīdam, pāstor illius regiōnis, puerōs sustulit, et uxōrī Accae Lārentiae nūtriendōs dedit.

FOUNDATION OF ROME, 753 B.C.

432. Sic Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Cum adolēvissent,⁹ et forte comperissent, quis ipsōrum avus, quae mātēr fuisset,¹⁰ Amūliū interfēcērunt, et Numitōrī avō rēgnū restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventīnō, quam¹¹ Rōmulus a suō nōmine Rōmam¹² vocāvit. Haec cum moenibus¹³ circumdarētur,¹⁴ Remus occisus est, dum frātrem irrīdēns moenia trānsilit.¹⁵

SEIZURE OF THE SABINE WOMEN.

433. Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret,¹⁶ asyllum patefēcit, ad quod multī ex cīvitātibus suis pulsī accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis cīvibus conjugēs deerant. Itaque fēstum Neptūnī et lūdōs instituit. Ad hōs cum multī ex finitimis populis cum mulieribus et liberis venissent,¹⁷ Rōmānī inter ipsōs lūdōs spectantēs virginēs rapuērunt.

WAR WITH THE SABINES.

434. Populī illī quōrum¹⁸ virginēs raptae erant bellum adversus raptōrēs suscepērunt. Cum Rōmae appropinquārent,¹⁹

¹ 220, II.

² 363.

³ 324, B.

⁴ 367, II.

⁵ 48.

⁶ 367, II.

⁷ 319, 2.

⁸ 258.

⁹ 324, B.

¹⁰ 343.

¹¹ 209.

¹² 209.

¹³ 258.

¹⁴ 324, B.

¹⁵ 331, I.

¹⁶ 311.

¹⁷ 324, B.

¹⁸ 233.

¹⁹ 324, B.

forte in Tarpēiam virginem incidērunt quae in arce sacra¹ procurābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem mōstrāret,² ei que permiserunt, ut mūnus sibi posceret.³ Illa petiit, ut sibi darent,⁴ quod in sinistris manibus gererent, anulōs aureōs et armillas significāns. At hostēs in arcem ab eā perducti scūtis⁵ Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistris manibus gerēbant.

TREATY WITH THE SABINES.

435. Tum Rōmulus cum hoste, qui montem Tarpēium tenēbat, pugnam cōseruit in eō locō, ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est. In mediā⁶ caede raptae prōcessērunt, et hinc patrēs hinc conjugēs et socerōs complectēbantur, et rogābant, ut caedis finem facerent.⁷ Utrique hīs precibus⁸ commōti sunt. Rōmulus foedus icit et Sabinōs in urbem recēpit.

INSTITUTIONS OF ROMULUS. — HIS DEATH.

436. Postea civitatem descripsit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit eosque⁹ cum ob aetatem tum ob reverentiam eis dēbitam patrēs¹⁰ appellāvit. Plēbem in trigintā cūriās distribuit, easque raptārum nōminibus¹¹ nuncupāvit. Annō¹² rēgnī tricēsimo septimō, cum exercitum lūstrāret,¹³ inter tempestātem ortam repente oculis hominum subductus est. Hinc alii¹⁴ eum ā senātōribus interfectum,¹⁵ alii¹⁴ ad deōs sublātum esse¹⁵ existimāverunt.

REIGN OF NUMA POMPILIUS.

437. Post Rōmuli mortem ūnius anni interrēgnum fuit. Quō¹⁶ elāpsō, Numa Pompilius, Curibus,¹⁷ urbe in agrō Sabinōrum, nātus, rēx¹⁸ creātus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nūllum gessit; nec minus tamen civitāti¹⁹ prōcūit. Nam et

¹ 281, 1.² 326, 1.³ 336, 2.⁴ 336, 1.⁵ 268.⁶ 284, 1.⁷ 336, 1.⁸ 258.⁹ 209.¹⁰ 209.¹¹ 258.¹² 276.¹³ 324, B.¹⁴ 293.¹⁵ 356.¹⁶ 273.¹⁷ 274, 1.¹⁸ 209, 8.¹⁹ 220, II, a.

légēs dedit, et sacra¹ plurima instituit, ut populi barbari et bellicosī mōrēs molliret.² Omnia³ autem, quae faciēbat, sē nymphae Egeriae, conjugis suae, monitū⁴ facere⁵ dicebat. Morbō⁶ dēcessit quadrāgēsīmō tertio imperii annō.⁷

TULLUS HOSTILIUS.

438. Numae⁸ successit Tullus Hostilius, cūjus avus sē⁹ in bellō adversus Sabīnōs fortem et strēnum virum¹⁰ praestiterat. Rēx¹¹ creatus bellum Albānis¹² indixit, idque trigeminōrum, Horatiōrum et Cūriatiōrum, certāmine¹³ finivit. Albam propter perfidiam Mettīi Fufetiī diruit. Cum trigintā duo annōs¹⁴ rēgnāset,¹⁵ fulmine¹⁶ ictus¹⁷ cum domō suā ārsit.

ANCUS MARCIUS.

439. Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex filiā nepōs, suscepit imperium. Hic vir aequitāte¹⁸ et religiōne avō¹⁹ similis, Latīnōs bellō²⁰ domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova ei²¹ moenia circumdedit. Carcerem primus²² aedificāvit. Ad Tiberis ostia urbem condidit, Ōstiamque vocāvit. Vicēsīmō quārtō annō²³ imperii morbō²⁴ obiit.

LUCIUS TARQUINIUS PRISCUS.

440. Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Dēmarātī filius, qui tyrannōs patriae Corinthi fugiēns in Etrūriam vēnerat. Ipse Tarquinius, qui nōmen ab urbe Tarquiniis accēpit, aliquandō Rōmam²⁵ profectus erat.

441. Cum Rōmae²⁶ commorārētur,²⁷ Ancī rēgis familiāritatem cōnsecūtus est, qui eum²⁸ filiōrum suōrum tūtōrem²⁹ reliquit.

¹ 281, 1.

² 311.

³ 281, 1.

⁴ 259.

⁵ 356.

⁶ 259.

⁷ 276.

⁸ 220, III.

⁹ 209.

¹⁰ 209.

¹¹ 209, 3.

¹² 220, III.

¹³ 258.

¹⁴ 215.

¹⁵ 324, B.

¹⁶ 258.

¹⁷ 372, 6.

¹⁸ 269.

¹⁹ 228.

²⁰ 258.

²¹ 220, III.

²² 284, 2.

²³ 276.

²⁴ 259.

²⁵ 216.

²⁶ 277.

²⁷ 324, B.

²⁸ 209.

²⁹ 209.

Sed is pūpillis¹ rēgnum intercēpit. Senātōribus, quōs Rōmulus creāverat, centum aliōs addidit, qui minōrum gentium sunt appellatī. Plūra bella fēliciter gessit, nec paucōs agrōs, hostibus adēptōs, urbis territōriō² adjūnxit. Primus³ triumpāns urbem intrāvit. Cloacās fēcit; Capitōlium incohāvit. Tricēsimō octāvō imperiī annō⁴ per Anci filiōs, quibus rēgnum ēripuerat, occisus est.

SERVIUS TULLIUS.

442. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex nōbili fēminā, captivā tamen et famulā. Cum adolēvisset,⁵ rēx ei filiam in mātrimonium dedit.

443. Cum Priscus Tarquinius occisus esset,⁶ Tanaquil dē superiōre parte domūs populum allocūta est, dicēns: *rēgem⁷ grave quidem, sed nōn lētāle vulnus accēpisse;⁸ eum petere, ut populus, dum convalesceret,⁹ Serviō Tullio⁹ oboediret.*¹⁰ Sic Servius rēgnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Montēs trēs urbi adjūnxit. Primus omnium cēsum ordināvit. Sub eō Rōma habuit octōgintā tria mīlia civium cum hīs, qui in agris erant.

444. Hic rēx interfectus est scelere¹¹ filiae Tulliae et Tarquiniī Superbi, filiī ejus rēgis, cui¹² Servius successerat. Nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō¹³ interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prima¹⁴ conjugem¹⁵ rēgem¹⁶ salūtāvit. Cum domum¹⁷ rediret,¹⁸ aurīgam super patris corpus, in viā jacēns, carpentum agere¹⁹ jussit.

TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS.

445. Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen mōribus²⁰ meruit. Bellō²¹ tamen strēnuus plūrēs finitimōrum populōrum²² vicit.

¹ 224.² 220, III.³ 282, 2.⁴ 276.⁵ 324, B.⁶ 324, B.⁷ 356.⁸ 356; 331, III, 2.⁹ 220, II, a.¹⁰ 336, 1.¹¹ 258.¹² 220, III.¹³ 253.¹⁴ 284, 2.¹⁵ 209.¹⁶ 209.¹⁷ 216.¹⁸ 324, B.¹⁹ 367, II.²⁰ 259.²¹ 269.²² 236.

Templum Jovis in Capitoliō aedificavit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppugnat,¹ urbem Latii, imperium perdidit. Nam cum filius ejus Lucrētia,² nobilissimae feminae, conjugī Tarquini Collatini, vim fecisset,³ haec se ipsa occidit in conspectu mariti, patris, amicorumque, postquam eos obtestata est⁴ ut hanc injuriam ulciscerentur.⁵

446. Hanc ob causam L. Brutus, Collatinus, alique nonnulli in exitium regis conjurarunt, populoque⁶ persuaserunt, ut ei portas urbis clauderet.⁷ Exercitus quoque, qui civitatem Ardeam cum rege oppugnabat, eum reliquit. Itaque fugit cum uxore et liberis suis. Ita Romae septem reges regnaverunt annos⁸ ducentos quadraginta tres.

2. The Early Republic, 509-241 B.C.

INSTITUTION OF THE REPUBLIC, 510 B.C.

447. Hinc consules coepere⁹ pro uno rege duo creari,¹⁰ ut, si unus malus esset, alter eum coerceret.¹¹ Annum eis imperium tributum est, ne per diuturnitatem potestatis insolentiores redderentur.¹² Fuerunt igitur anno¹³ primo expulsis regibus¹⁴ consules L. Junius Brutus, acerrimus libertatis vindex, et Tarquinius Collatinus maritus Lucrētia, sed Collatino¹⁵ paulo¹⁶ post dignitas adempta est. Placuerat enim, ne quis ex Tarquiniorum familia Romae maneret.¹⁷ Ergo cum omni patrimonio suo ex urbe migravit, et in ejus locum Valerius Publicola consul¹⁸ factus est.

DEATH OF BRUTUS.

448. Commovit bellum urbi rex Tarquinius. In prima pugna Brutus consul, et Arruns, Tarquini filius, inter sese¹⁹ occiderunt.

¹ 331, I.

² 220, I.

³ 324, B.

⁴ 323.

⁵ 336, I.

⁶ 220, II, a.

⁷ 336, I.

⁸ 215.

⁹ 196.

¹⁰ 364.

¹¹ 311.

¹² 311.

¹³ 276.

¹⁴ 273.

¹⁵ 224.

¹⁶ 266.

¹⁷ 336, 3.

¹⁸ 209, 3.

¹⁹ 290.

Rōmānī tamen ex eā pugna victōrēs recessērunt. Brūtum Rōmānae matrōnae, quasi commūnem patrem, per annum luxērunt. Valerius Publicola Spurium Lucrētium¹ collēgam² sibi fēcit; cum morbo exstinctus esset,³ Publicola Horātium Pulvillum sibi collēgam sūmpeit. Itaque primus annus quinque cōsulēs habuit.

WAR WITH PORSENA, 508 B.C.

449. Secundō quoque annō⁴ iterum Tarquinius bellum Rōmānis⁵ intulit, Porsenā,⁶ rēge Etruscōrum, auxilium ei ferente. In illō bellō Horātius Cocles sōlus pontem ligneum dēfendit et hostēs cohibuit, dum pōns ā tergō ruptus esset.⁷ Tum sē cum armīs in Tiberim conjēcit, et ad suōs⁸ trāsnāvit.

450. Dum Porsena urbem obsidet,⁹ Quintus Mūcius Scaevola, juvenis fortis animi¹⁰ in castra hostium sē contulit eō cōsiliō, ut rēgem occideret.¹¹ At ibi scribam rēgis prō ipso rēge interfēcit. Tum ā rēgis satellitibus¹² comprehēsus et ad rēgem dēductus, cum Porsena eum ignibus¹³ allātis terreret,¹⁴ dextram arae¹⁵ accēnsae imposuit, dum flammīs cōsumpta esset.¹⁶ Hōc facinus rēx mirātus juvenem dīmisit incolumem. Tum hīc, quasi beneficium referēs, ait, *trecentōs aliōs juvenēs*¹⁷ *in eum conjūrāsce.*¹⁸ Hāc rē¹⁹ territus Porsena pācem cum Rōmānis fēcit, Tarquinius autem Tusculum²⁰ sē contulit, ibique privātus cum uxōre cōsensuit.

SECESSION OF THE PLEBS, 494 B.C.

451. Sextō decimō annō²¹ post rēgēs exāctōs, populus Rōmae²² sēditionem fēcit, questus quod tribūtis²³ et militiā ā senātū exhaurirētur.²⁴ Magna pars plēbis urbem reliquit, et in montem

¹ 209.² 209.³ 324, B.⁴ 276.⁵ 220, III.⁶ 273.⁷ 331, III, 2.⁸ 281, 1.⁹ 331, I.¹⁰ 237.¹¹ 311.¹² 253.¹³ 273.¹⁴ 324, B.¹⁵ 220, III.¹⁶ 331, III, 2.¹⁷ 356.¹⁸ 258.¹⁹ 216.²⁰ 276.²¹ 277.²² 258.²³ 319.

trans Anienem amnem secessit. Tum patres turbati Menenium Agrippam miserunt ad plebem qui eam senatui conciliaret.¹ Hic eis inter alia² fabulam narravit de ventre et membris humani corporis; qua³ populus commotus est, ut in urbem rediret.⁴ Tum primum tribuni plebis creati sunt, qui plebem adversum nobilitatis superbiam defenderent.⁵

TREASON OF CORIOLANUS, 492 B.C.

452. Octavo decimo anno⁶ post exactos reges Q. Marcius, Coriolanus⁷ dictus ab urbe Volscorum Corioli, quam bello cepit, plebi⁸ invisus fieri coepit. Quare urbe⁹ expulsus ad Volcos, acerrimos Romanorum hostes, contendit, et ab eis¹⁰ dux¹¹ exercitus factus Romanos saepe vicit. Jam usque ad quintum milliarium urbis accesserat, nec ullis civium suorum legationibus flecti poterat, ut patriae parceret.¹² Denique Veturia mater et Volumnia uxor ex urbe ad eum venerunt; quarum fletu¹³ et precibus commotus est, ut exercitum removeret.¹⁴ Quo¹⁵ facto a¹⁶ Volscis ut proditor occisus esse dicitur.

BATTLE OF THE CREMERA, 477 B.C.

453. Cum Romani adversum Veientes bellum gererent,¹⁷ familia Fabiorum sola hoc bellum suscepit. Profecti sunt trecenti sex nobilissimi homines, duce¹⁸ Fabio consule. Cum saepe hostes viderent, apud Cremeram fluvium castra posuerunt. Ibi, cum Veientes dolo¹⁹ usi eos in insidias pellexissent, in proelio exorto omnes perierunt. Unus superfuit ex tanta familia, qui propter aetatem puerilem duci non potuerat ad

¹ 311, 2.

² 281, 1.

³ 258.

⁴ 336, 1.

⁵ 311, 2.

⁶ 276.

⁷ 209, 3.

⁸ 228.

⁹ 251.

¹⁰ 253.

¹¹ 209, 3.

¹² 336, 1.

¹³ 258.

¹⁴ 336, 1.

¹⁵ 273.

¹⁶ 253.

¹⁷ 324, B.

¹⁸ 273.

¹⁹ 258, 1.

pugnam. Hic genus propagavit ad Quintum Fabium Maximum illum, qui Hannibalem prudenti cunctatione debilitavit.

THE DECENVIRS.

454. Anno trecentesimo et altero ab urbe condita decenviri creati sunt, qui civitati leges scriberent.¹ Hi primo anno bene egerunt; secundo autem dominationem exercere² coeperunt. Sed cum unus eorum, Appius Claudius, virginem ingenuam, Virginiam, Virginii centurionis filiam, corrumpere vellet, pater eam occidit. Tum ad milites profugit eosque ad seditionem commovit. Adempta est decenviris³ potestas, ipsique omnes aut morte⁴ aut exilio puniti sunt.

THE SIEGE OF FALERII.

455. In bello contra Vejentanos Furius Camillus urbem Falerios obsidebat. In qua obsidione cum ludi litterarum magister principum filios ex urbe in castra hostium duxisset, Camillus hoc donum non accepit, sed scelestum hominem, manibus⁵ post tergum vinctis, pueris Falerios reducendum tradidit; virgasque eis dedit, quibus praeditorem in urbem agerent.⁶ Hac tanta animi nobilitate commoti Falisci urbem Romanis tradiderunt. Camillo autem apud Romanos crimini⁷ datum est, quod albis equis triumphasset⁸ et praedam inaeque divisisset; damnatus ob eam causam et civitate⁹ expulsus est.

ROME CAPTURED BY THE GAULS, 390 B.C.

456. Paulo¹⁰ post Galli Senones ad urbem venerunt, Romanos ad flumen Alliam vicerunt, et urbem etiam occuparunt. Jam nihil praeter Capitolium defendi potuit. Et jam praesidium fame¹¹ laborabat, et in eo erant, ut pacem a Gallis auro¹²

¹ 311, 2.² 364.³ 294.⁴ 258.⁵ 273.⁶ 311, 2.⁷ 227.⁸ 319.⁹ 261.¹⁰ 266.¹¹ 259.¹² 268.

emerent,¹ cum Camillus cum manu militum superveniens hostes magnò proelio² superavit.

ACHIEVEMENT OF TITUS MANLIUS TORQUATUS, 361 B.C.

457. Annò trecentésimò nōnāgésimò tertio post urbem conditam Galli iterum ad urbem accesserant, et quārtò milliariō trāns Aniēnem fluvium cōsēderant. Contrā eōs missus est Titus Quinctius. Ibi Gallus quidam eximiā corporis magnitudinē³ fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad certāmen singulāre prōvocāvit. Titus Mānlius, nōbilissimus juvenis, prōvocātiōnem accēpit, Gallum occidit, eumque torque⁴ aureō spoliāvit, quō ornātus erat. Hinc et ipse et posteri ejus Torquātī⁵ appellati sunt. Galli fugam capessivērunt.

MARCUS VALERIUS CORVINUS, 348 B.C.

458. Novò bello⁶ cum Gallis exortò, annò urbis quadringētesimò sextò, iterum Gallus prōcessit rōbre atque armis insignis, et prōvocāvit ūnum ex Rōmānīs ut sēcum armis dēcereret.⁷ Tum sē M. Valerius, tribūnus militum, obtulit; et, cum prōcessisset armātus, corvus ei⁸ suprā dextrum brachium sēdit. Mox, commissā pugnā,⁹ hīc corvus alīs¹⁰ et unguibus Galli oculis verberāvit. Ita factum est ut Gallus nūllō negōtiō & Valeriō interficeretur,¹¹ qui hinc Corvini nōmen accēpit.

WAR WITH THE SAMNITES, 323 B.C.

459. Postēā Rōmānī bellum gessērunt cum Samnitibus, ad quod L. Papirius Cursor cum honōre dictātōris profectus est. Qui cum negōtiis cūjuscām causā Rōmā¹² rediisset, prācēpit Q. Fabiō Rullianō,¹³ magistrō equitum, quem apud exercitum reliquit, nē pugnam cum hoste committeret.¹⁴ Sed ille, occasiōnem

¹ 342.

² 258.

³ 267.

⁴ 251.

⁵ 209, 3.

⁶ 273.

⁷ 336, 1.

⁸ 224.

⁹ 273.

¹⁰ 258.

¹¹ 342, 2.

¹² 216.

¹³ 220, II, a.

¹⁴ 336, 1.

nactus, felicissimè dimicavit, et Samnitès delēvit. Ob hanc rem à dictātōre capitis¹ damnātus est. At ille in urbem cōfūgit, et ingentī favōre² militum et populi liberātus est; in Papīrium autem tanta exorta est sēditio, ut paene ipse interficeretur.³

BATTLE OF THE CAUDINE FORKS, 321 B.C.

460. Duobus annis⁴ post T. Veturius et Spurius Postumius cōsulēs bellum adversum Samnitès gerēbant. Hī à Pontio Telesinō,⁵ duce hostium, in insidiās inducti sunt. Nam ad Furculās Caudinās Rōmānōs pellexit in angustias, unde sēsē expedire nōn poterant. Ibi Pontius patrem suum Herennium rogāvit, quid faciendum putāret.⁶ Ille respondit, *aut omnēs occidendōs esse⁷ ut Rōmānōrum virēs frangerentur,⁸ aut omnēs dīmittendōs, ut beneficiō obligārentur.* Pontius utrumque cōsiliū ir probāvit, omnēsque sub jugum misit. Samnitès denique post bellum undēquingentā annōrum superātī sunt.

WAR WITH PYRRHUS, 281 B.C.

461. Dēvictis Samnitibus,⁹ Tarentinis¹⁰ bellum indictum est, quia lēgātis Rōmānōrum injūriam fēcissent.¹¹ Hī Pyrrhum,¹² Epīri rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium¹³ poposcērunt. Is mox in Italiam vēnit, tumque primum Rōmānī cum trānsmarinō hoste pugnāverunt. Missus est contrā eum cōsul Pūblius Valerius Laevinus. Hic, cum explorātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, jussit eōs per castra dūci, tumque dīmitti, ut renūtiārent¹⁴ Pyrrhō, quaecumque à Rōmānīs¹⁵ agerentur.

462. Pugnā¹⁶ commissā, Pyrrhus auxiliō¹⁷ elephantōrum vicit. Nox proeliō finem dedit. Laevinus tamen per noctem

¹ 244.² 259.³ 317.⁴ 266.⁵ 253.⁶ 343.⁷ 356.⁸ 311.⁹ 273.¹⁰ 220, III.¹¹ 319.¹² 213.¹³ 213.¹⁴ 311.¹⁵ 253.¹⁶ 273.¹⁷ 258.

fugit. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mille octingentōs cēpit, eōsque summō honōre¹ trāctāvit. Cum eōs, qui in proeliō interfecti erant, omnēs adversis vulneribus² et truci vultū³ etiam mortuōs jacere⁴ vidēret, tulisse ad caelum manūs dicitur cum hāc vōce: "*Ego cum tālibus viris brevī⁴ orbem terrārum subigam.*"

463. Postea Pyrrhus Rōmam⁵ perrēxit; omnia ferrō Ignique vāstāvit; Campāniam dēpopulātus est, atque ad Praeneste vēnit, milliāriō ab urbe octāvō decimō. Mox⁶ terrōre⁶ exercitūs, qui cum cōsule⁷ sequēbātur, in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē captivīs redimendīs⁸ missi honōrificē ab eō⁹ suscepti sunt; captivōs sine pretiō reddidit. Unum ex lēgātīs, Fabricium sic admirātus est ut ei quārtam partem rēgni sui prōmitteret,¹⁰ si ad sē trānsiret,¹¹ sed a Fabriciō contemptus est.

464. Cum jam Pyrrhus ingenti Rōmānōrum admiratiōne¹² tenērētur, lēgātum misit Cīneam, praestantissimum virum, qui pācem peteret¹³ eā condiciōne, ut Pyrrhus eam partem Italiae quam armīs¹⁴ occupāverat obtinēret. Rōmāni respondērunt, *eum cum Rōmānīs pācem habēre nōn posse¹⁵ nisi ex Italiā recessisset.*¹⁶ Cīneās cum rediisset, Pyrrhō eum interroganti, quālis ipsi Rōma visa esset,¹⁷ respondit, sē rēgum patriam vīdisse.

INTEGRITY OF FABRICIUS.

465. In alterō proeliō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est, elephantī interfecti, viginti milia hostium caesa sunt. Pyrrhus Tarentum¹⁸ fugit. Interjectō annō, Fabricius contrā eum missus est. Ad hunc medicus Pyrrhi nocte¹⁹ vēnit prōmittēns, sē Pyrrhum venēnō occisūrum si mūnus sibi darētur.²⁰ Hunc Fabricius

¹ 260.

² 267.

³ 356.

⁴ 276.

⁵ 216.

⁶ 259.

⁷ 265.

⁸ 377, 1.

⁹ 253.

¹⁰ 317.

¹¹ 356.

¹² 258.

¹³ 311, 2.

¹⁴ 258.

¹⁵ 356.

¹⁶ 356.

¹⁷ 343.

¹⁸ 216.

¹⁹ 276.

²⁰ 356.

vinctum reduci¹ jussit ad dominum. Tunc rex admiratus illum dixisse fertur: "*Ille est Fabricius, qui difficilius ab honestate quam sol a cursu suo averti potest.*" Paulo post Pyrrhus tertio etiam proelio fusus a Tarento recessit, et, cum in Graeciam rediisset, ad Argos, Peloponnēsi urbem, interfectus est.

FIRST PUNIC WAR, 264 B.C.

466. Anno quadringentesimo nonagesimo post urbem conditam Rōmānōrum exercitūs prīmum in Siciliam trājēcērunt, rēgemque Syracūsārum Hierōnem, Poenōsque, quī multās civitatēs in eā insulā occupāverant, superāverunt. Quinto annō hūjus belli, quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, prīmum Rōmānī, Gaiō Duiliō, Gnaeō Cornēliō Asinā cōsulibus,² mari dimicāverunt. Duilius Carthāginiēnsēs vicit, trigintā nāvēs occupāvit, quattuordecim mersit, septem milia hostiū³ cepit, tria milia occidit. Nulla victōria Rōmānīs⁴ grātiōr fuit.

THE ROMANS INVADE AFRICA, 256 B.C.

467. Paucis annis interjectis, bellum in Africam est translātum. Hamilcar, Carthāginiēnsiū dux, pugna⁵ nāvali superātus est; nam, perditis sexāgintā quattuor nāvibus, se recēpit; Rōmānī vīginti duās amiserunt. Cum in Africam vēnissent, Poenōs in plūribus proeliis vicērunt, magnam vim hominū cēpērunt, septuāgintā quattuor civitatēs in fidem accēpērunt. Tum victi Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs⁶ petiērunt. Quam cum Mārcus Atīlius Rēgulus, Rōmānōrum dux, dare nōllet nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus, Carthāginiēnsēs auxilium petiērunt ā Lacedaemoniīs. Hi Xanthippum misērunt, qui Rōmānum exercitum magnō proelio vicit. Rēgulus ipse captus et in vincula conjectus est.

¹ 367, II.

² 273, 1.

³ 236.

⁴ 228.

⁵ 258.

⁶ 213, 2.

PATRIOTISM OF REGULUS, 250 B.C.

468. Nōn tamen ubique fortūna Carthāginiēnsibus¹ fāvit. Cum aliquot proeliis² victi essent, Rēgulum rogāverunt, ut Rōmam proficisceretur,³ et pācem captivōrumque permūtationem a Rōmānis obtinēret. Ille cum Rōmam⁴ vēnisset, inductus in senātum dixit, sē dēsisse⁵ Rōmānum esse ex illā diē, quā⁶ in potestatem Poenōrum vēnisset.⁶ Tum Rōmānis⁷ suāsit, nē pācem cum Carthāginiēnsibus facerent:⁸ illōs enim tot cāsibus frāctōs spem nūllam nisi in pāce habēre: tantī nōn esse,⁹ ut tot milia captivōrum propter sē ūnum et paucōs, quī ex Rōmānis capti essent,⁹ redderentur. Haec sententia obtinuit. Regressus igitur in Āfricam crudēlissimis suppliciis exstinctus est.

CLOSE OF THE FIRST PUNIC WAR, 241 B.C.

469. Tandem C. Lutātiō Catulō, A. Postumiō cōsulibus,¹⁰ annō belli Pūnici vicēsimo tertiō magnum proelium nāvale commissum est contrā Lilybaeum, prōmunturium Siciliae. In eō proeliō septuāgintā trēs Carthāginiēnsium nāvēs captae, centum viginti quinque dēmersae, trigintā duo milia hostium¹¹ capta, tredecim milia occisa sunt. Statim Carthāginiēnsēs pācem petiērunt, eisque pāx tribūta est. Captivi Rōmānōrum, qui tenēbantur a Carthāginiēnsibus, redditī sunt. Poeni Sicilia,¹² Sardinia, et cēteris Insulis, quae inter Italiam Āfricamque jacent, dēcessērunt, omnemque Hispāniam, quae citrā Hiberum est, Rōmānis permisērunt.

¹ 220, II, a.

² 258.

³ 336, 1.

⁴ 216.

⁵ 356.

⁶ 276.

⁷ 220, II, a.

⁸ 336, 1.

⁹ 356.

¹⁰ 273, 1.

¹¹ 236.

¹² 251.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

414. ei: *for her.* **pariēbat:** notice the imperfect tense, which is regularly used to denote a customary or repeated action. **illam:** this is the subject of *cēlāre*; *māssam* is the object. **repperit:** from *reperiō*. **nisi quod:** *except what*; the antecedent of *quod* is *id* understood. **minōres:** *i.e. lesser riches*; understand *divitiās*.

415. pascēbantur: *used to graze.* **dissidiō ... ortō:** *when discord arose or since discord arose, lit. discord having arisen.* In rendering the ablative absolute, pains should be taken to translate it by an equivalent English idiom. **quantum boni:** *how great advantage, lit. how much of good.*

416. Cui: indirect object of *inquit*. **bonum:** gen. plu. of *bōs*. **ista:** *your, lit. that, that of yours.* **quod:** *in that*; the clause *quod pateris* is explanatory of *invidia*. **pateris:** from *pattor*. **nec ...** **nec:** *neither ... nor.* **vells, possis:** these verbs are in the subjunctive by attraction. In Latin, a clause dependent upon a subjunctive is regularly attracted into the same mood.

417. Duo: *two men.* **finā:** the adv., *together.* **iter faciēbant:** *were travelling, lit. were making a journey.* **nec:** *and ... not.*

418. praetereuntī: *who was passing by*; pres. participle of *praetereō*.

419. ille: *i.e. the farmer.* **eum:** the mouse. **quod dēspērāre dēbeat:** *that it ought to despair*; *quod* is the relative; clauses of result are sometimes introduced by relatives. **modo ... velit:** *provided it wishes*; *modo* in this sense is regularly followed by the subjunctive.

420. quī . . . extrahat: *to pull it out.* **Hōc:** *i.e. the removal of the bone.* **parva mercēs:** this is the predicate nominative with *vidētur*, the subject of *vidētur* being the clause *quod . . . extrāxistī*, *that you took your head out unharmed.*

421. inquit: 3d plu. of *inquam*; its subject is *hostēs*. **hōc ipsum:** *this very thing.* **cum:** *though.*

422. Agricola senex: *an old farmer.* **mortem sibi appropinquāre:** *that death was approaching him, lit. death to approach himself.*

ut fieri solet : as is wont to happen. **nōverat** : knew ; the perfect of **nōscō** has the force of the present in the sense, *I know*, and the pluperfect similarly has the force of the imperfect. **ut frangerent** : to break. Observe that *frangerent* is in the imperfect, although *hortātur* is in the present. At first sight this seems to violate the principle for the sequence of tenses ; but *hortātur* is what is called an Historical Present, i.e. it really refers to the past, and hence is treated as an historical tense. **Quod cum facere nōn possent** : and when they could not do this, lit. when they could not do which ; it is very common in Latin to introduce a sentence by a relative, where in English we should employ a demonstrative or personal pronoun with a conj., — and he, but he, and this, but this, etc. **frāctis** : i.e. by the sons. **quamque** : and how ; *que* is the enclitic.

423. quō modō . . . cavērent : as to how they should guard against the cat. **multis aliis prōpositis** : when many other things had been proposed. **posse** : this infinitive depends upon the idea of thinking involved in *placuit*, etc. **cum jam quaereretur**, etc. : when it came to asking who would fasten, lit. when it was already asked, etc. ; *quī* is the interrogative ; this form (instead of *quis*) often occurs in indirect questions.

424. sēsē : it, i.e. the tortoise. **eam, rem** : *eam* is subject of *petere* ; *rem* is the object. **arreptam sustulit** : snatched up and carried.

425. Prima : understand *pars*. **ait** : third sing. of pres. ind. of *ajō*. **et** : also. **quī** : its antecedent is the following *is*. **inimicum** : as an enemy. **Quid facerent**, etc. : what were the beasts to do ? **quae** : which one ?

426. Sātūrnus : the god Saturn. **Jāniculō** : the Janiculum was a hill on the right bank of the Tiber, directly opposite the seven hills on which Rome was built.

427. Trōja : the famous city in northwestern Asia Minor. The mythical date of its overthrow is 1184 B.C. **Hinc** : i.e. from Troy. **pepercerat** : from *parcō*. **ei benignē recep.** } **dedit** : received him kindly and gave him, lit. gave to him having been kindly received. **in mātīmōnium, in honōrem** : in marriage, in honor ; the Latin says *into*.

428. monte Albānō : in Latium about twenty miles S.E. of Rome. **Alba Longa** : lit. the long white (town) ; so called from the fact that its white buildings stretched for a long distance over the ridge of the hill. **genitus erat** : from *gignō*. **disque ad Rōmam conditam** : up to the very founding of Rome, lit. even up to Rome founded.

429. *tōnāret*: impersonal. *praecipitātus est*: fell headlong. *minor nātū*: the younger, lit. the lesser as to birth. *reliquisset*: inasmuch as the preceding indirect question is indirect discourse, *reliquisset* is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse; hence the subjunctive.

430. *Vestālem virginem*: there were six Vestal virgins; their duty was to watch the fire which was kept constantly burning on the hearth of Vesta's temple. *ā Mārte*: by (lit. from) Mars. *peperit*: from *pariō*.

431. *ultrā ripam, etc.*: i.e. had overflowed its banks, lit. had poured itself beyond the bank. *effūderat* is from *effundō*. *essent positi* = *positi essent*; from *pōnō*. *in siccō*: on dry land; *siccō* is used substantively. *Quod*: this, lit. which; another illustration of the use of the relative pronoun, where in English we naturally employ the demonstrative. *austrulit*: from *tollō*. *nūtriendōs*: to be cared for.

432. *trānsigērent*: from *trānsigō*. *adolēvissent*: from *adolēscō*. *frātre irridēns*: in ridicule of his brother, lit. ridiculing.

433. *populis*: the pupil should bear in mind that this means *tribes*, not *people* in the ordinary English sense. *ipsōs*: very. *spectantēs*: as they were looking on.

434. *raptōrēs*: those who had seized (the maidens). *quod*: what (that which); as antecedent, understand *id*, object of *darent*. *et ea*: those also, those too; *et* is here an adverb.

435. *Forum Rōmānum*: the Forum was situated on level ground surrounded by six of the seven hills of Rome. *raptae*: the (women who had been) seized. *hinc . . . hinc*: on the one side . . . on the other.

436. *discripait*: i.e. organized different political and social classes. *cum . . . tum*: not only . . . but also, lit. when . . . then (while . . . at the same time). *ortam*: from *orior*. *oculis*: from the eyes; *oculis* is really dative; verbs of taking away at times take the dative in the sense of *from*. *alii . . . alii*: some . . . others.

437. *interregnum*: *interregnum*, i.e. a period between reigns. *Curi-bus*: this limits *nātus*. *quidem*: to be sure; observe that *quidem* always lays stress upon the word immediately preceding it (here *bellum*); frequently it is best to attempt no special translation of *quidem*, but to bring out its force in English by the arrangement of words or by oral emphasis. *gessit*: from *gerō*. *nec minus tamen prōfuit*: and yet he was none the less of advantage. *et . . . et*: both . . . and.

ad nymphae: etc.: he said he did at the advice of the nymph Egeria, his wife.

438. praestiterat: from *praestō*. **rēgnasset** = *rēgnāvisset*. **Arat**: remember that *ardeō* is intransitive.

439. nova ei moenia circumdedit: surrounded it with new walls, lit. surrounded new walls to it. **ad Tiberis ostia**: Rome was some twenty miles from the mouth of the Tiber by the course of the river. **obit**: died, lit. met (death).

441. pūpillis: from his wards. **minōrum gentium**: understand *senātōrēs*, i.e. senators of the lesser gentes (tribes). **nec paucōs agrōs**: and not a few lands. **hostibus**: from the enemy: dative. **adēmp-tōs**: from *adimō*. **triumphāns**: in a triumphal procession, lit. triumphing. **Cloacae**: several of the ancient Roman sewers still exist and are in use to-day. **Capitōlium**: the magnificent temple on the summit of the Capitoline Hill. It was dedicated to Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva. **per Anei filiōs**: i.e. at their instigation; they hired assassins to perform the deed. **quibus**: from whom; dative.

443. grave quidem: serious, to be sure. **eum petere**: that he requested. **dum convalesceret**: until he should recover. **in agris**: in the country.

444. jacēs: (which was) lying.

445. Templum Jovis: the one begun by Tarquinius Priscus. **ipsa**: with her own hand.

446. Hanc ob causam: when a noun is limited by an adjective or a pronoun, the preposition very often stands between the two. **in exitum**: for the destruction. **ei**: i.e. against him.

447. ei . . . esset: *esset* is in the subjunctive as the result of attraction to the subjunctive *coarēret*. **insolentiōrēs**: too arrogant. **expulsis rēgibus**: after the expulsion of the kings. **Collatīnō**: from *Collatinus* (dative). **Placuerat**: they had ordained, lit. it had pleased (them). **in ejus locum**: in his place.

448. urbī: against the city. **inter sēs occiderunt**: killed each other. **Rōmānī . . . victōrēs recesserunt**: the Romans retired as victors; *victōrēs* is the predicate nominative. **lūxerunt**: from *lūgēō*.

449. Horātius Cocles: read Macaulay's *Horatius at the Bridge* (*Lays of Ancient Rome*) for a spirited account of Horatius's achievement. **ad suos**: to his friends.

450. eō cōsiliō, etc.: with this design, viz. to kill the king; the clause *ut . . . occideret* is in apposition with *cōsiliō*. **Ignibus allātis**:

by bringing in fire; *allās* is from *afferō*. *terrēret*: i.e. endeavored to frighten him. *accēnsae*: burning, lit. kindled. *cōnsūmpta esset*: this loss of his right hand was the origin of the name Scaevola, 'the left-handed.' *conjūrāsse*: a shortened form for *conjūrāvīsse*. *privātus*: as a private citizen.

451. *post rēgēs exlētōs*: after the expulsion of the kings. *trās Anīēnem*: hardly more than three or four miles from the city. *fābulam dē ventre*, etc.: according to the fable, the limbs of the body once rebelled and refused longer to furnish food for the stomach. Menenius pointed out that the governing class at Rome was really just as essential to the welfare of the state, as was the stomach to the welfare of the body. *tribūnī*: at first two in number, later five, and ultimately ten. By their power of intercession they could protect plebeians from the unjust treatment of which the patrician magistrates were often guilty.

452. *quintum milliārium urbis*: fifth milestone from the city. *Quō factō*: and when this had been done. *ut prōditor*: as a traitor.

453. *duce Fabiō*: under the leadership of Fabius. *hostēs*: obj. of *viciissent*. *dolō fās*: having employed deceit. *exortō*: from exortor. *Ūnus*: one only.

454. *trecentēsimō et alterō*: the three hundred and second. *ab urbe conditā*: from the founding of the city.

455. *lūdi litterārī*: the two words together mean *school*, lit. a school for letters (reading and writing), as opposed, for example, to a gladiatorial school, where gladiators were trained. *principum filios*: as hostages. *in castra hostium*: i.e. of the Romans. *manibus . . . vir tīs*: with his hands tied behind his back. *quibus . . . agerent*: with which to drive. *Camillō crimīnī . . . datum est*: lit. it was set against Camillus for a charge, i.e. Camillus was accused. *triumphāssēt*: = *triumphāvīssēt*. *damnātus*: understand *est* from *expulsus* *est*.

456. *Paulō post*: *post* is here an adverb. *Galli Senonēs*: a tribe from northern Italy. *ad Alliam*: the Allia was a small river flowing into the Tiber about eleven miles from Rome. *occupāvērunt*. *in eō*, etc.: were on the point of purchasing, lit. were in this, (viz.) that they should purchase; *ut . . . emerent* explains *eō*.

457. *quārtō milliārīō*: at the fourth milestone; abl. of place, without the prep.

458. *cōcum*: = *cum eō*; the preposition *cum* is always thus appended to the personal and reflexive pronouns. *obtulit*: from *offerō*. *armā*.

tus : in arms. *ei suprà dextrum, etc.* : perched above his right arm, lit. above the right arm to him. *Ita factum est* : thus it happened. *nullo negotio* : with no difficulty, i.e. without difficulty.

459. *dictatoris* : on occasions of great public danger, the Romans often appointed a dictator, who had absolute power. His period of office was limited to six months. *Qui cum* : when he. *magistro equitum* : the master of the horse was appointed by the dictator and ranked next to him. *nactus* : from *nanciscor*. *capitis damnatus est* : was condemned to death, lit. of his head (i.e. of his life).

460. *post* : adv. *faciendum* : i.e. *faciendum esse*. *aut . . . aut* : either . . . or. *dimittendos* : understand *esse*. *sub jugum* : in token of submission; the yoke was made by setting two spears in the ground and laying a third across the top.

461. *poposcerunt* : from *poscō*. *agerentur* : subjunctive by attraction to *revētiārent*.

462. *per noctem* : by night. *adversis vulneribus* : with wounds in front. *etiam mortuos* : even in death. *Ego cum talibus viris . . . subigam* : this is equivalent to a conditional sentence of the second type, *If I should have such soldiers, I should subdue*.

463. *perrēxit* : from *pergō*. *ad Praeneste* : to the vicinity of Praeneste; to say : to Praeneste, the accusative alone would have sufficed. *milliario*, etc. : at the eighteenth milestone; abl. of place, without the prep. *exercitus* : objective gen. depending upon *terrōre*; fear of the army. *de captivis redimendis* : with regard to ransoming the captives. *si transiret* : this is virtually a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, since *prōmitteret* is practically equivalent to *said he would give him*.

464. *admiratione tenērur* : in English, we say : to be filled with admiration. *ea condicione* : explained by the following *ut*-clause. *nisi recessisset* : unless he should withdraw.

465. *interjecto anno* : after the lapse of a year, lit. a year having been put between. "*Ille est Fabricius qui*" : Fabricius is one who. *à Tarento* : from the vicinity of Tarentum; to say : from Tarentum, the ablative alone would have sufficed. *ad Argos* : near Argi (Argos).

466. *trāscerunt* : here intransitive, — crossed over.

467. *Paucis annis interjectis* : after the lapse of a few years. *in fidem* : into allegiance. *Quam cum, etc.* : when Regulus was unwilling to grant this. *nisi durissimis condicionibus* : except on very hard terms. *captus* : for *captus est*.

400. *dēclīnāre*: from *dēclīnō*. *nō . . . facerent*: not to make.
illōs . . . habēre: indirect discourse dependent on the idea of saying
 involved in *sūdsit*. *tanti nōn esse*: that it was not worth while, lit.
 of so great account; *tanti* is a predicate genitive of quality, with some
 such word as *preti* (of value) understood. *ut . . . redderentur*: this
 substantive clause of result is the logical subject of *esse*.

400. *captas, dēmeras, capta*: understand *sunt* with these.

GENERAL LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

NOTE. — Of the fifteen hundred words in this Vocabulary, only about half are employed in the Lessons of the body of the book (see Preface, p. vii). The remainder occur in the Fables and Roman History. Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the numeral 1 following the present indicative.

A

A., abbreviation for Aulus, *Aulus*.
ā, **ab**, prep. w. **abl.**, *from*; *by*.
abeō, **ire**, **ii**, **itūrus**, *go away*; *pass*.
abiciō, **ere**, **jēcī**, **jectus**, *throw away*, *cast*.
absēns (pres. participle of **abeum**), *entis*, *absent*.
abstineō, **ēre**, **tinui**, *abstain from*.
abeum, **esse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, *be absent*, *be distant* (§ 182).
ac (**atque**), *and*, *and also*; *ac* is not used before vowels.
Acca Larentia, **ae**, **f.**, *Acca Larentia*, a woman's name.
accidō, **ere**, **ceci**, **cessurus**, *draw* **NUM.**
accendō, **ere**, **cendi**, **census**, *kindle*.
accidō, **ere**, **idi**, *happen*.
accingō, **ere**, **cinxī**, **cinctus**, *gird*.
accipiō, **ere**, **ēpi**, **eptus**, *receive*.
accurrō, **ere**, **cucurri**, **cursum**, *run to*, *run up*; *hasten*.
accūsō, **1**, *accuse*.
acer, **acris**, **acre**, *sharp*, *vigorous*, *keen*, *severe*.
aciēs, **ei**, **f.**, *line of battle*.
acriter, *sharply*, *fiercely*.
ad, prep. w. **acc.**, *to*, *toward*; *for* (denoting purpose); *near*.
addō, **ere**, **idi**, **itūs**, *add*.
adducō, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *lead on*, *impel*.
adeō, **ire**, **ii**, **itūrus**, *go to*, *visit*.

AD

adimō, **ere**, **ēmi**, **emptus**, *take away*.
aditus, **ūs**, **m.**, *approach*.
adjaceō, **ēre**, **ui**, **itūrus**, *lie near*, *lie next*.
adjungō, **ere**, **jūnxī**, **jūctus**, *join to*; *annex*.
adjuvō, **āre**, **jāvi**, **jātus**, *help*.
administrō, **1**, *perform*.
admirātiō, **ōnis**, **f.**, *admiration*.
admiror, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *admire*.
admodum, *quite*, *very much*.
admoneō, **ēre**, **ui**, **itūs**, *remind*, *warn*.
adolēscō, **ere**, **lēvi**, *grow up*.
adorior, **irī**, **ortus sum**, *attack*.
adsum, **adeo**, **adfuī**, *be present*, *be at hand* (§ 182).
adolēscēns, **centis**, **m.**, *young man*.
adveniō, **ire**, **vēni**, **ventum**, *arrive*.
adventus, **ūs**, **m.**, *arrival*.
adversarius, **ii**, **m.**, *adversary*.
adversum, **adversus**, prep. w. **acc.**, *against*.
adversus, **a**, **um**, *adverse*; *in front* (of wounds).
advesperāscō, **ere**, *to grow dark*.
aedificium, **i** (**ii**), **n.**, *building*.
aedificō, **1**, *build*.
Aenōās, **ae**, **m.**, *Aeneas*, a man's name.
aequālis, **e**, *equal*; as noun, **m.**, *a mate*.
aequitās, **tātis**, **f.**, *justice*.
aequus, **qua**, **quum**, *level*.

āēr, āēris, m., *air*.
 aestās, tātis, f., *summer*.
 aetās, tātis, f., *age, time of life*.
 afferō, ferre, attuli, allātus, *bring*
 (§ 188).
 Āfrica, ae, f., *Africa*.
 ager, agri, m., *field, land*.
 agger, eris, m., *embankment, rampart*.
 agmen, minis, n., *army (on the march), column*.
 agnus, i, m., *lamb*.
 agō, ere, ēgi, āctus, *do; drive*.
 agricola, ae, m., *farmer*.
 agricultūra, ae, f., *agriculture*.
 Agrippa, ae, m., *Agrippa, a man's name*.
 ajō, defective, *say; pres. and perf.*
 3d sing. āit.
 ala, ae, f., *wing*.
 alacer, eris, ere, *eager*.
 Alba Longa, Albæ Longæ, f.,
Alba Longa, name of a town.
 Albānus, a, um, *Alban*.
 albus, a, um, *white*.
 aliēnus, a, um, *unfavorable*.
 aliquandō, *once upon a time; formerly*.
 aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, adj., *some*
 (§ 102).
 aliquis, aliquid, *some one, something*
 (§ 102).
 aliquot, indecl., *several, some*.
 alius, a, ud, *other, another, else*
 (§ 61).
 Allia, ae, f., *Allia, name of a river*.
 alligō, i, *fasten to, tie to*.
 Allobrogēs, um, *the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe*.
 alloquor, loqui, locūtus sum, *address, speak to*.
 alō, ere, alui, altus, *nourish*.
 alter, era, erum, *the other; second*
 (§ 61).
 altitūdō, inis, f., *height; depth*.

altus, a, um, *high, deep; as noun,*
 altum, i, n., *the deep, the deep sea*.
 amicō, adv., *in a friendly manner*.
 amicitia, ae, f., *friendship*.
 amicus, i, m., *friend*.
 amittō, ere, misi, missus, *lose*.
 amnis, is, m., *river*.
 amō, i, *love*.
 ampliō, i, *enlarge*.
 amplius, adv., *more*.
 amplius, a, um, *ample, glorious*.
 Amūlius, i (if), m., *Amulius, a man's name*.
 an, interrog. particle, *or, whether*.
 Anchisēs, ae, m., *Anchises, a man's name*.
 ancora, ae, f., *anchor*.
 Ancus Mārcius, gen. Anci Mārci
 (if), m., *Ancus Mārcius, fourth king of Rome*.
 angustiae, ārum, f. pl., *a narrow pass*.
 angustus, a, um, *narrow*.
 animadvertō, ere, verti, versus, *notice*.
 animal, mālis, n., *animal*.
 animus, i, m., *mind, soul; courage, heart*.
 Aniō, Aniēnis, m., *Anio, name of a river*.
 annectō, ere, nexui, nexus, *tie to*.
 annus, i, m., *year*.
 annuus, a, um, *for one year*.
 ante, prep. w. acc., *before, in front of; adv., before, ago*.
 antea, *previously, before*.
 antecōdō, ere, cessi, cēsūrus, *precede*.
 antequam, conj., *before*.
 antiquus, a, um, *ancient*.
 ānulus, i, m., *ring*.
 anus, ūs, f., *old woman, old crone*.
 apertus, a, um, *open*.
 apparātus, ūs, m., *luxury*.
 appāreō, ēre, uī, *appear*.

- appellō, 1, name, call.
 appetō, ere, petivī, petitus, seek, try to get.
 Appius, i (ii), m., Appius, a man's name.
 appropinquō, 1, approach.
 Aprilis, e, adj., of April.
 apud, prep. w. acc., among, at, with, at the home of.
 aqua, ae, f., water.
 aquila, ae, f., eagle.
 Aquitānia, ae, f., Aquitania, a district of Gaul.
 āra, ae, f., altar.
 arbitror, trāri, trātus sum, consider.
 arbor, oris, f., tree.
 arceō, ēre, nī, keep off, keep away.
 arceasō, ere, ivi, itus, summon.
 Ardea, ae, f., Ardea, a Latin town.
 ārdēō, ēre, ārsi, ārsurus, burn.
 ārea, ae, f., court-yard.
 argentum, i, n., silver.
 Argi, ōrum, m., Argos, name of a town.
 Ariovistus, i, m., Ariovistus, a king of the Germans.
 arma, ōrum, n. pl., arms.
 armātūra, ae, f., equipment.
 armilla, ae, f., bracelet.
 armō, 1, arm.
 arripō, ere, nī, optus, seize.
 arrogō, 1, lay claim to.
 Arrūns, runtis, m., Arruns, a man's name.
 arx, arcis, f., citadel.
 Ascanius, i (ii), m., Ascanius, son of Aeneas.
 Asia, ae, f., Asia.
 Asina, ae, m., Asina, a man's name.
 asinus, i, m., ass.
 amentātor, ōris, m., flatterer.
 asyllum, i, n., place of refuge.
 at, but.
 Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., Athens.
 Athēnodōrus, i, m., Athenodorus, a man's name.
 Attilius, i (ii), Attilius, a man's name.
 atque, and, and also; see ac.
 Atticus, i, m., Atticus, a friend of Cicero.
 attuli, perf. of afferō.
 auctoritās, tātis, f., authority, influence.
 audācter, courageously.
 audāx, gen. audācis, courageous.
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum; semi-dep., dare.
 audiō, īre, ivi, itus, hear.
 aufugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitūrus, flee.
 augeō, ēre, auxi, auctus, increase (tr.).
 Aulus, i, m., Aulus, a man's name.
 aureus, a, um, golden.
 auriga, ae, m., char. steer.
 aurum, i, n., gold.
 aut, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.
 autem, however; but.
 autumnus, i, m., autumn.
 auxilium, i (ii), n., aid, help; in pl. auxilia, ōrum, n., auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.
 Avāricum, i, n., Avaricum, a Gallic town.
 Aventinus, i, Aventine, a hill of Rome.
 āvertō, ere, tī, versus, avert, turn aside.
 avicula, ae, f., bird, small bird.
 avus, i, m., grandfather.
 Bacēnis, is, f., Bacenis, a forest.
 barba, ae, f., beard.
 barbarus, i, m., a barbarian; adj., us, a, um, barbarian.
 beātus, a, um, happy.
 Belgae, ārum, m. pl., Belgians, a Gallic tribe.
 bellicōsus, a, um, warlike.

bellō, 1, *make war, carry on war.*

bellum, ī, n., *war.*

bene, adv., *well* (§ 79).

beneficium, ī (ii), n., *kindness.*

benignō, *kindly, graciously.*

bēstia, ae, f., *beast.*

Bibulus, ī, m., *Bibulus, a man's name.*

bīdūm, ī, n., *two days.*

Bōjī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Boji, an ancient tribe.*

bonus, a, um, *good*; in pl., bona, ōrum, n., *property.*

bōs, bovis, m., *ox*; gen. pl. boum.

bracchium, ī (ii), n., *arm.*

brevis, e, *short, brief*; brevī, *within a short time.*

Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*

Brūtus, ī, m., *Brutus, a man's name.*

C., abbreviation for Gāius, *Gaius.*

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall.*

caedēa, is, f., *slaughter.*

caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus, *cut, slay.*

caelum, ī, n., *heaven.*

Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar.*

calamitās, tātis, f., *calamity.*

Camillus, ī, m., *Camillus, a man's name.*

IMPERFECT

Campānia, ae, f., *Campania.*

canis, is, c., *dog.*

capessō, ere, ivī, itus, *take*; fugam capessere, *flee.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take*; adopt; *capture.*

Capitōlium, ī (ii), n., *the Capitol.*

capra, ae, f., *she-goat.*

captīva, ae, f., *captive.*

captīvus, ī, m., *captive, prisoner.*

caput, itis, n., *head.*

carcer, is, m., *prison.*

carpentum, ī, n., *chariot.*

carpō, ere, carpaī, carptus, *pluck*; enjoy.

Carthāginiēnsis, e, *Carthaginian*; Carthāginiēnsēs, ium, m., *Carthaginians.*

cārus, a, um, *dear.*

cassīta, ae, f., *lark.*

castellum, ī, n., *fort.*

castra, ōrum, n. pl., *a camp.*

cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, misfortune.*

catēna, ae, f., *chain.*

Catilina, ae, m., *Catiline.*

Catulus, ī, m., *Catulus, a man's name.*

causa, ae, f., *cause, condition*; causā, abl., *for the sake of*; the dependent genitive precedes causā.

caute, adv. (from cautus), *cautiously.*

caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautūrus, *be on one's guard.*

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *yield, withdraw.*

celer, eris, e, *swift.*

celeritās, tātis, f., *speed.*

celeriter, *quickly.*

cēlō, 1, *conceal.*

cēnsus, ūs, m., *census.*

centum, *hundred*, indecl.

centuriō, ōnis, m., *centurion.*

cernō, ere, *perceive.*

certāmen, inis, n., *contest.*

cortē, adv., *at least, at any rate.*

certus, a, um, *sure*; comp. certior in phrase certior fierī, *be informed*;

certiōrem facere, *inform.*

cessātor, ōris, m., *loiterer.*

cēterī, ae, a, *the rest*; the others.

cibus, ī, m., *food.*

Cicerō, ōnis, m., *Cicero.*

Cineās, ae, m., *Cineas, a man's name.*

circiter, adv., *about.*

circumārō, 1, *plough around.*

circumdō, dāre, dedī, dātus, *surround, place around.*

circumēō, ire, ii, itus, *go around, surround.*

- circumveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, *surround*.
 citerior, ius, comp. adj., *nearer, hither*.
 citrā, prep. w. acc., *this side of*.
 civis, is, c., *citizen, fellow-citizen*.
 civitas, tātis, f., *state*.
 clam, *secretly*.
 clāmor, ōris, m., *shout, shouting*.
 clārus, a, um, *clear, loud; distinguished*.
 classis, classis, f., *fleet*.
 Claudius, ī (iī), m., *Claudius, a man's name*.
 claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close*.
 claustrum, ī, n., *fastening*.
 clēmēns, gen. entis, *merciful*.
 clipeus, ī, m., *shield*.
 cloāca, ae, f., *sewer*.
 Cn., abbreviation of *Gnaeus, Gnaeus, a man's name*.
 Cocles, itis, m., *Cocles, a man's name*.
 coepī, coepisse, *began, have begun* (§ 198).
 coērcēō, ēre, uī, itus, *hold in check, confine*.
 cōgitō, ī, *think*.
 cognōmen, inis, n., *name, surname*.
 cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *learn*.
 cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōāctus, *force, compel; collect*.
 cohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *check, restrain*.
 cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (division of a legion).
 Collātinus, ī, m., *Collatinus, a man's name*.
 collātus, perf. pass. ptc. of cōnferō.
 collēga, ae, m., *colleague*.
 collis, is, m., *hill*.
 collocō, ī, *place, arrange, station*.
 colloquium, ī (iī), n., *conference*.
 colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, *confer*.
 collum, ī, n., *neck*.
 colōnia, ae, f., *colony*.
 combūrō, ere, ussi, ūstus, *burn*.
 Comitium, ī (iī), n., *Comitium, a place of public meeting at Rome*.
 commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies*.
 commemorō, ī, *recount*.
 comminuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *dash to pieces*.
 committō, ere, misi, missus, *bring together; with proelium or pugnam, to join battle*.
 commoror, āri, ātus sum, *delay, sojourn*.
 commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, stir up, excite; induce*.
 commūniō, ire, iī, itus, *strongly fortify*.
 communis, e, *common*.
 commūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change*.
 comparō, ī, *get ready*.
 comperiō, ire, perī, pertus, *find out*.
 complector, ī, plexus sum, *embrace*.
 compleō, ēre, plēvī, plētus, *fill up*.
 complūrēs, plūra, gen. ium, *very many*.
 comprehendō, ere, endī, ēnsus, *arrest*.
 concēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *grant*.
 conciliō, ī, *reconcile, win over*.
 concilium, ī (iī), n., *council*.
 concordia, ae, f., *harmony*.
 concurrō, ere, ī, cursum, *run together*.
 concursus, ūs, m., *a running together*.
 condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, terms*.
 condō, ere, didī, ditus, *found, build; hide*.
 condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *hire*.
 cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, *bring together; sō cōnferre, betake one's self* (§ 188).
 cōnficiō, ere, fecī, fectus, *exhaust*.
 cōnfidō, ere, fisis sum, *trust, semi-dep.* (§ 220, II, a).

- cōnfirmō, 1, *establish, confirm.*
 cōn fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee for refuge.*
 cōniciō, ere, jēci, jectus, *hurl; cast; put.*
 conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus, *unite.*
 conjūnx, jugia, c., *husband; wife.*
 conjūratiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
 conjūrō, 1, *conspire.*
 Conōn, ōnis, m., *Conon, a Greek.*
 cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *endeavor, attempt.*
 cōnsector, āri, ātus sum, *follow up.*
 cōnsenēscō, ere, senūi, *grow old.*
 cōnsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *acquire.*
 cōnserō, ere, uī, tus, *join.*
 cōnservō, 1, *preserve.*
 cōnsidō, ere, ēdī, essus, *settle.*
 cōnsilium, ī (ii), n., *plan; council; advice.*
 cōnsistō, ere, stitī, *consist.*
 cōnspectus, ūs, m., *view, sight.*
 cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *see.*
 cōnspicor, āri, ātus sum, *catch sight of, observe.*
 cōnstantia, ae, f., *persistency.*
 cōnstat, impers., *it is evident (§ 202).*
 cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *decide, determine.*
 cōnsul, ulis, m., *consul.*
 cōnsulatus, ūs, m., *consulship.*
 cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, *use up, consume.*
 contemnō, ere, tempai, temptus, *despise.*
 contendō, ere, tandī, tentum, *hurry, hasten; contend.*
 contentus, a, um, *contented.*
 contineō, ēre, uī, confine, *hold in check.*
 contrā, prep. w. acc., *against, opposite.*
 contrārius, a, um, *contrary to, opposite.*
 contrōversia, ae, f., *controversy.*
 contumēlia, ae, f., *insult.*
 convalēscō, ere, valui, *recover, regain strength.*
 conveniō, īre, vōni, ventum, *come together, assemble.*
 convocō, 1, *call together.*
 cōpia, ae, f., *plenty; in pl. cōpiae, ārum, troops, forces.*
 Corinthus, ī, f., *Corinth, a city of Greece.*
 Coriolānus, ī, m., *Coriolanus, a man's name.*
 Coriolī, ōrum, m., *Corioli, a Latin town.*
 Cornēlius, ī (ii), *Cornelius, a man's name.*
 cornū, ūs, n., *horn; in military sense, wing of an army.*
 corōna, ae, f., *crown, garland.*
 corpus, oris, n., *body.*
 corrupō, ere, rūpi, ruptus, *ruin, bribe.*
 Corvinus, ī, m., *Corvinus, a man's name.*
 corvus, ī, m., *raven.*
 cottidiē, *every day, daily.*
 crās, adv., *to-morrow.*
 Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus, a man's name.*
 crēber, bra, brum, *frequent.*
 crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, *believe (§ 220, II, a).*
 Cremera, ae, f., *Cremera, a river in Etruria.*
 creō, 1, *make, beget; elect.*
 crimen, inis, n., *charge, accusation.*
 crudēlis, e, *cruel.*
 culpō, 1, *blame.*
 1. cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*
 2. cum, conj., *when; because, since, though; cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.*
 cunctatiō, ōnis, f., *delay.*
 cupiditās, tātis, f., *desire, eagerness.*
 cupidus, a, um, *fond, eager.*

cūr, adv., *why?*

Curēs, ium, f., *Cures*, a Sabine town.

cūria, ae, f., *ward*.

Cūriātius, ī (ii), m., pl. Cūriātii, ōrum, m., *Curiatii*, an Alban family.

Curius, ī (ii), m., *Curius*, a Roman.

cūrō, 1, *care for, take care of*.

Cursor, ōris, m., *Cursor*, a man's name.

cursus, ūs, m., *course*.

cūstōdia, ae, f., *custody*.

damnō, 1, *condemn*; capitis dam-nāre, *condemn to death*.

Dāmoclēs, is, m., *Damocles*, a man's name.

dē, prep. w. abl., *concerning; of, from*.

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe*; with a dependent infinitive, *ought*; pass., *to be due*.

dēbilitō, 1, *weaken*.

dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *with-draw; die*.

decem, indecl., *ten*.

decemvirī, ōrum, m., *decemvirs*, a board of ten men.

dēcērnō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, *decree; decide* (by combat), *fight*.

decimus, a, um, *tenth*.

dēclārō, 1, *make clear, show*.

dēcūrrō, ere, curri, cursūrus, *run down; rush, hasten*.

dēditiō, ōnis, f., *surrender*.

dēdō, dere, didī, dēditus, *give up, surrender*.

dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead away*.

dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt*.

dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus, *defend*.

dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f., *defence*.

dēflectō, ere, xī, xus, *turn aside*.

deinde, *then, afterwards*.

dēlābor, ī, lāpsus sum, *sink down*.

dēlātus, perf. pass. participle of dēferō.

dēlectō, 1, *delight*.

dēlēō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *destroy*.

dēliberō, 1, *deliberate, consult*.

dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *choose*.

delphīnus, ī, m., *dolphin*.

Dēmarātus, ī, m., *Demaratus*, a man's name.

dēmergō, ere, mersi, mersus, *sink*.

dēmetō, ere, messui, messus, *reap*.

dēmittō, ere, misi, missus, *let fall*.

dēnārius, ī (ii), m., *a denarius*, a Roman coin worth about eighteen cents.

dēnique, *finally*.

dēns, dentis, m., *tooth*.

dēnuō, adv., *again*.

dēpopulor, āri, ātus sum, *lay waste*.

dēprehendō, dera, dī, hēnsus, *catch*.

derideō, ēre, risi, risurus, *laugh to scorn*.

dēserō, ere, serui, sertus, *abandon, desert*.

dēsīnō, ere, siī, situm, *cease*.

dēsistō, ere, stitī, *cease*.

dēspērō, 1, *despair*.

dēspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *despise*.

dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, *be wanting, fail* (§ 182).

dētrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, *snatch*.

dētrimentum, ī, n., *loss, damage, harm*.

deus, ī, m., *god*.

dēvincō, ere, vici, victus, *conquer*.

dexter, tra, trum, *right*; as subet. (sc. manus), *right hand*.

dīcō, ere, dixī, dictus, *say; utter; appoint; call*.

dictātor, ōris, m., *dictator*.

diēs, ēī, m. or f., *day*.

differō, ferre, distulī, dilātum, *differ* (§ 188).

difficilis, e, *difficult*.

- difficulter, adv. from adj. *difficilis*,
with difficulty.
- digitus, *i*, m., finger.
- dignitas, tātis, f., dignity.
- dignus, a, um, worthy.
- diligentia, ae, f., diligence.
- dīmīcō, l, contend.
- dīmīttō, ere, mīsi, missus, let go,
dismiss.
- Dionysius, *i* (ii), m., Dionysius,
tyrant of Syracuse.
- diripio, ere, ripui, reptus, plunder.
- diruo, ere, rui, rutus, war down,
destroy.
- discēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus, depart,
withdraw.
- disciplina, ae, f., discipline.
- discordia, ae, f., strife, discord.
- discordō, l, be at variance, quarrel.
- describō, ere, scripsi, scriptus, mark
out; divide into classes.
- dispōnō, ere, posui, positus, dis-
tribute.
- dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., disagreement.
- dissidium, *i* (ii), n., dissension.
- distribuō, ere, ui, utus, distribute.
- diū, adv., a long time.
- diuturnitas, tātis, f., long duration.
- dividō, ere, isi, isus, divide.
- divinus, a, um, divine.
- divitiae, arum, f. pl., riches.
- dō, dare, dedi, datus, give, render;
put, set.
- doceō, ēre, ui, doctus, teach.
- dolor, ōris, m., grief.
- dolus, *i*, m., deceit, cunning.
- dominātiō, ōnis, f., rule, tyranny.
- dominus, *i*, m., master.
- Domitius, *i* (ii), m., Domitius, a
man's name.
- domō, āre, ui, itus, subdue.
- domus, ūs, f., house, home.
- dōnec, until.
- dōnō, l, present.
- dōnum, *i*, n., gift.
- dubitō, ... doubt, be in doubt; hesi-
tate, waver.
- ducenti, ae, a, two hundred.
- dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, lead.
- Duilius, *i* (ii), m., Duilius, a man's
name.
- dum, while; as long as; until.
- Dumnorix, rigis, m., Dumnorix, a
chief of the Haedui.
- duo, duae, duo, two (§ 80, 1).
- duodecim, indecl., twelve.
- dūrus, a, um, hard, severe.
- dux, ducia, c., leader.
- ē, ex, prep. w. aol., from, out of, of;
ē is not used before vowels or h.
- ēducō, ere, dūxi, ductus, lead forth.
- efficiō, ere, feci, factus, make, ren-
der; do, bring about.
- effodiō, ere, fodi, fossus, dig up.
- effugiō, ere, fugi, fugiturus, escape.
- effundō, ere, fudi, fusus, pour out.
- Egeria, ae, f., Egeria, a nymph.
- ego, mei, *i*.
- ēgredior, gredi, gressus sum, march
out.
- ēgregius, a, um, excellent, especial.
- ēiciō, ere, jeci, jectus, thrust out;
sē ēicere, rush forth.
- ejus modī, of that kind (§ 237, 1).
- ēlābor, labi, lapsus sum, glide away;
escape, elapse.
- ēlātus, perf. pass. participle of *effero*.
- elephantus, *i*, m., elephant.
- emō, ere, emi, emptus, buy.
- enim, for; cannot begin a sentence.
- eō, adv., thither, to that place.
- eō, ire, ivi (ii), itum, go (§ 197).
- eōdem, to the same place.
- Epaminōndās, ae, m., Epaminondas,
a Greek hero.
- Epīrus, *i*, f., Epirus.
- epulae, arum, f. pl., feast.
- eques, itis, m., horseman; in pl.,
cavalry, horsemen.

- equester, tris, tre, *equestrian*.
 equinus, a, um, *of horses*; sēta
 equina, *a horse-hair*.
 equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry*.
 equus, ī, m., *horse*.
 ergā, prep. w. acc., *toward*.
 ergō, *therefore*.
 ēripiō, ere, uī, eptus, *snatch away*,
 take away.
 errō, 1, *err, be mistaken*.
 ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *sally*.
 et, *and*; et . . . et, *both . . . and*;
 as adv., *also, even*.
 etiam, *also; even*.
 Etrūria, ae, f., *Etruria*.
 Etrūscus, a, um, *Etruscan*.
 etiā, *although*.
 ēvertō, ere, tī, sus, *overturn, destroy*.
 ex, prep. w. abl., *out of*; see ē.
 excedō, ere, cessi, cessurus, *leave*,
 depart from.
 excitō, 1, *stir up, rouse*.
 exeō, ire, ii, itum, *go forth, go out*
 (§ 197).
 exerceō, ēre, uī, itus, *exercise*;
 practise.
 exercitus, ūs, m., *army*.
 exhaustiō, ire, hausi, haustus, *drain*;
 impoverish.
 exigō, ere, ēgi, āctus, *drive out*,
 banish.
 exiguus, a, um, *scant, small*.
 eximius, a, um, *extraordinary*.
 existimō, 1, *think, consider*.
 exitium, ī (ii), n., *destruction*.
 exitus, ūs, m., *exit, passage*.
 exor, oriri, ortus sum, *arise*.
 expediō, ire, ivi, itus, *extricate*.
 expeditus, a, um, *unencumbered*,
 light-armed; easy.
 expellō, ere, puli, pulsus, *drive out*,
 banish.
 experior, iri, pertus sum, *try, test*.
 explorātor, ōris, m., *scout*.
 explorō, 1, *examine*.
 expugnō, 1, *take by storm*.
 exquisitus, a, um, *choice*.
 exsilium, ī (ii), n., *exile*.
 existō, ere, stiti, arise.
 expectō, 1, *expect, await*.
 exstinguō, ere, stinxi, stinctus, *de-*
 stroy; in pass., *be put to death*,
 die.
 extrā, prep. w. acc., *outside, beyond*.
 extrahō, ere, trāxi, trāctus, *extract*,
 draw forth.
 extrēmus, a, um, *extreme, outer-*
 most; end of.
 Fabius, ī (ii), m., *Fabius*, a man's
 name; Fabii, ōrum, m. pl., *Fabii*,
 a Roman gens.
 Fabricius, ī (ii), m., *Fabricius*.
 fabula, ae, f., *fable*.
 facile, *easily*.
 facilis, e, *easy*.
 facinus, inoris, n., *crime deed*.
 faciō, ere, feci, factus, *make, do*,
 pass. irreg. (§ 193).
 factiō, ōnis, f., *faction*.
 facultās, tātis, f., *supply*.
 Falerii, ōrum, m., *Falerii*, a city.
 Falisci, ōrum, m., *Faliscans*, inhabi-
 tants of Falerii.
 falx, falcis, f., *scythe, sickle*.
 fama, ae, f., *reputation, report*.
 famēs, is, f., *hunger*; abl. sing.
 irreg. famē.
 familia, ae, f., *family*.
 familiāritās, tātis, f., *intimacy*.
 famula, ae, f., *servant; slave*.
 fascis, is, m., *bundle*.
 fātum, ī, n., *fate*.
 faucēs, ium, f. pl., *throat, jaws*.
 Faustulus, ī, m., *Faustulus*, a man's
 name.
 faveō, ēre, fāvi, fauturus, *favor*.
 favor, ōris, m., *favor, good will*.
 felēs, is, f., *cat*.
 feliciter, *successfully*.

- fēlix**, gen. *fēlicis*, *fortunate, happy*.
fēmina, ae, f., *woman*.
fera, ae, f., *wild beast*.
ferāx, gen. *ferācis*, *fertile*.
ferō, *almost, about, practically*.
ferō, *ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, carry, bring; lift, raise; lend (of help); say*.
ferrum, i, n., *iron; sword*.
ferveō, ēre, buī, *grow hot*.
fēstūm, i, n., *festival*.
fidēs, ei, f., *fidelity, loyalty, protection; confidence, allegiance*.
fidō, ere, *fisus sum, semi-dep., trust* (§ 220, II, a).
fidūcia, ae, f., *confidence*.
filia, ae, f., *daughter*.
filius, i (ii), m., *son*.
finiō, ire, ivi, itus, *finish, terminate*.
finis, is, m., *end, boundary; in pl., territory*.
finitimus, a, um, *neighboring*.
fiō, fieri, *factus sum, become, be made; occur, happen; pass. of faciō* (§ 193).
firmiter (*firminus, firmissimō*), *firmly*.
firmus, a, um, *firm, strong*.
flāgitō, i, *demand*.
flamma, ae, f., *flame, fire*.
flectō, ere, xī, xus, *bend, induce*.
flētus, ūs, m., *weeping*.
flūmen, inis, n., *river*.
fluvius, i (ii), m., *river*.
focus, i, m., *hearth*.
foedus, eris, n., *treaty*.
fore, fut. infin. of *sum* (§ 116, footnote 2).
forte, *by chance*.
fortis, e, *brave*.
fortiter, *bravely*.
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune; pl. fortūnae, ōrum, f., fortunes (possessions)*.
fortūnātus, a, um, *fortunate*.
forum, i, n., *forum; market-place*.
fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench*.
frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctus, *break*.
frāter, tris, m., *brother*.
frūmentum, i, n., *grain*.
frūstrā, adv., *in vain*.
fuga, ae, f., *flight*.
fugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitūrus, *flee, escape from*.
fugō, i, *put to flight*.
fulmen, inis, n., *thunderbolt*.
funditor, ōris, m., *slinger*.
fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour, pour out; of troops, to rout*.
furcula, ae, f., *fork; Furculae Caudinae, Caudine Forks*.
Fūrius, i (ii), m., *Furius, a man's name*.
fūrtum, i, n., *theft*.
futūrus, a, um, *future participle of sum*.
Gāius, i, m., *Gaius, a man's name. (Abbreviated G.)*
Galba, ae, m., *Galba, a man's name*.
Gallus, i, m., *a Gaul*.
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul*.
gallīna, ae, f., *hen*.
gemini, ōrum, m. pl., *twins*.
gener, i, m., *son-in-law*.
Genava, ae, f., *Geneva, a town of the Allobroges*.
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe; gens (division of the Roman people)*.
genus, eris, n., *stock, family*.
Germāni, ōrum, m. pl., *Germans*.
gerō, ere, gessi, gestus, *carry, wear, carry on, perform; with bellum, to wage; of office, to hold*.
gignō, ere, genui, genitus, *beget, bring forth; pass., be born*.
gladius, i (ii), m., *sword*.
Gnaeus, i, m., *Gnaeus, a man's name. (Abbreviated Gn.)*
gradus, ūs, m., *step, gait*.

Graecia, ae, f., *Greece*.

Graecus, i, m., *a Greek*.

grātia, ae, f., *influence*.

grātus, a, um, *pleasing, welcome; grateful*.

gravis, e, *heavy, laden; difficult; severe, serious*.

grūs, gruis, f., *crane*.

habēō, ēre, habuī, habitus, *have, possess, hold*.

habitō, i, *dwelt*.

Haeduī, ōrum, m., *Haedui*, a Gallic tribe.

haedus, i, m., *kid*.

Hamilcar, caris, m., *Hamilcar*, a Carthaginian general.

Hannibal, balis, m., *Hannibal*, the famous Carthaginian general.

hasta, ae, f., *spear*.

haud, *not*.

Helvētīi, ōrum, m., *Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe.

Herennius, i (ii), m., *Herennius*, a man's name.

hīberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winterquarters*.

Hiberus, i, m., *the Hiberus* (modern Ebro), a river in Spain.

1. **hīc**, haec, hōc, pron., *this*.

2. **hīc**, adv., *here, at this place*.

hiemō, i, *pass the winter*.

hiems, is, f., *winter*.

Hierō, ōnis, m., *Hiero*, ruler of Syracuse.

hinc, *hence*; **hinc . . . hinc**, *on this side . . . on that side*.

Hispania, ae, f., *Spain*.

homō, minis, c., *man*.

honestās, tātis, f., *integrity*.

honor, ōris, m., *honor*.

honōrifīcō, *honorably, with respect*.

hōra, ae, f., *hour*.

Horātius, i (ii), m., *Horatius*, a man's name; **Horātīi**, ōrum, *Horatii*, a Roman family.

hortor, āri, ātus sum, *exhort, urge*.

Hostilius, i (ii), m., *Hostilius*, a man's name.

hostis, is, m., *enemy*; especially frequent in pl., *the enemy*.

hūc, *hither*.

hūmānus, a, um, *human*.

ibi, *there, in that place*.

(**icō**, ere), **icī**, **ictus**, *strike*.

idcirco, adv., *therefore*.

idem, eadem, *idem*, *the same*.

idōlon, i, n., *ghost, phantom, spectre*.

idōneus, a, um, *suitable*.

igitur, *therefore, accordingly; now*.

(Stands usually after first word in clause).

ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly*.

ignis, is, m., *fire*.

ignōminia, ae, f., *ignominy, disgrace*.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, *that; that one; he, she, it*.

imāgō, inis, f., *image, spectre*.

imbēcillus, e, *weak, poor*.

imber, imbris, m., *rain-storm*.

immortālis, e, *immortal*.

impedimentum, i, n., *hindrance*; in pl., *baggage*.

impediō, īre, īvī (ii), **ītus**, *impede, hinder*.

imperātor, tōris, m., *commander*.

imperitus, a, um, *inexperienced*.

imperium, i (ii), *rule, sway*.

imperō, i, *command; demand; order; reign; levy*.

impetus, ūs, m., *onset, attack*.

implōrō, i, *entreat*.

impōnō, ere, posui, **positus**, *place upon*.

improbō, i, *disapprove, reject*.

īnus, a, um, *lowest* (§ 74, 2).

in, prep. w. abl., *in, on*, denoting rest in a place; w. acc., *into, in, to, against*.

- inaequū, *unfairly*.
 incendō, ere, cendī, cōsusus, *set on fire*.
 incertus, a, um, *uncertain*.
 incidō, ere, idi, *fall upon; fall in with*.
 incipiō, ere, cōpī, ceptus, *begin*.
 incitō, ī, *urge on, encourage*.
 inclūdō, ere, clūsi, clūsus, *shut up, confine*.
 incognitus, a, um, *unknown*.
 incohō, ī, *begin*.
 incola, ae, m., *inhabitant*.
 incolō, ere, colui, cultus, *inhabit*.
 incolūmis, e, *unharmed, uninjured*.
 incommodum, ī, n., *disaster*.
 incursiō, ōnis, f., *incursion, attack*.
 indiō, ere, dixi, dictus, *proclaim, appoint; with bellum, to declare*.
 indolēs, is, f., *nature; character*.
 inducō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead in; draw in; draw*.
 ineō, ire, īi, itus, *enter upon; cōnsilium inire, form a plan (§ 197)*.
 inermis, e, *unarmed*.
 inferō, ferre, tuli, illātus, *bring upon, bring against; produce (§ 188)*.
 inferior, us, *lower, inferior (§ 74, 2)*.
 infestus, a, um, *hostile*.
 infimus, a, um, *superl. of inferior (§ 74, 2)*.
 infirmus, a, um, *weak*.
 inflō, ī, *blow out, inflate*.
 infrendō, ere, *gnash*.
 ingēns, gen. ingentis, *huge*.
 ingenuus, a, um, *free-born*.
 inhaerē, ere, haemi, haesurus, *stick fast*.
 inhiō, ī, *be eager for (lit. gape for)*.
 inimicus, ī, m., *a (personal) enemy*.
 initium, ī (īi), n., *beginning*.
 injūria, ae, f., *wrong, injustice*.
 innectō, ere, nexui, nexus, *bind*.
 innuō, ere, ui, ūtus, *nod, beckon*.
 inopia, ae, f., *lack, need*.
 inquam; 3d sing. inquit; 3d pl. inquant, *say* (inserted between words of a direct quotation).
 insidiae, ārum, f. pl., *ambush; plots; treachery*.
 insignis, e, *distinguished*.
 insiliō, ire, ui, *jump upon (§ 220, II, a)*.
 insolēns, gen. Insolentia, *insolent*.
 instāns, pres. participle of in-tō.
 instituō, ere, ui, ūtus, *institute, appoint*.
 institūtum, ī, n., *institution*.
 instō, āre, itī, *press on, be eager*.
 instruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus, *draw up, arrange; fit out*.
 insula, ae, f., *island*.
 intellegō, ere, lēxi, lectus, *know, understand*.
 intendō, ere, endī, entus, *stretch, bend*.
 inter, prep. w. acc., *among, between, in the midst of*.
 intercipiō, ere, cōpī, ceptus, *take away*.
 interdum, *at times, sometimes*.
 intereā, *in the meanwhile*.
 intereō, ire, īi, iturus, *perish*.
 interest, *it concerns, impers. from intersum*.
 interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *kill*.
 intericiō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *throw between*.
 interim, *in the meanwhile*.
 interimō, ere, ōmī, ōmptus, *kill*.
 interior, ius, *inner*.
 interrēgnum, ī, n., *interregnum*.
 interrogō, ī, *ask*.
 intersum, esse, fui, futurus, *be present at*.
 intrā, prep. w. acc., *within*.
 intrō, ī, *enter*.
 intus, adv., *within*.

invādō, ere, vāsī, vāsum, enter,
invade.

inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, find.

invicem, in turn.

invidēō, ēre, vidī, visum, envy.

invidia, ae, f., envy.

invisus, a, um, hated, hateful.

invītō, ī, invite.

invītus, a, um, unwilling.

ipse, a, um, self.

irrideō, ēre, risī, risus, deride, ridicule.

irritō, ī, urge on, tempt.

is, ea, id, that; he, she, it; pl., they.

iste, a, ud, that; that of yours.

ita, so (of manner).

Italia, ae, f., Italy.

Italus, a, um, Italian; as noun, m.,
an Italian.

itaque, accordingly, and so.

iter, itineris, n., journey; march;
way; iter facere, march; travel.

iterum, again.

jaceō, ēre, uī, itūrus, lie, recline.

jam, already.

Jāniculum, ī, n., the hill Janiculum.

jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussus, order.

jūdicō, ī, judge, adjudge.

jugum, ī, n., yoke; ridge (of mountains).

jūmentum, ī, n., beast of burden.

jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus, join;
societātem jungere, form a partnership.

Jūnius, ī (iī), m., Junius, a man's

name.

Juppiter, Jovis, m., Jupiter.

Jūra, ae, m., the Jura, chain of
mts. on west of Switzerland.

jūrō, ī, swear, take oath.

jūs, jūris, n., right, power.

jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, n.,
oath.

jūstus, a, um, just.

juvenco, ae, f., heifer.

juvānis, is, m., a young man.

Kalendae, ārum, f. pl., Kalends
(first of the month).

L., abbreviation of Lūcius, Lucius,
a man's name.

Labiēnus, ī, m., Labienus, a famous
lieutenant of Caesar.

labor, ōris, m., labor, exertion.

labōrō, ī, toil; suffer; in battle, be
hard pressed.

Lacedaemonius, a, um, Spartan.

lacerō, ī, tear in pieces.

laccēō, ere, cessīvi (iī), itus, harass.

lacus, ūs, m., lake.

laetus, a, um, glad, joyful.

Laevinus, ī, m., Laevinus, a man's
name.

laniō, ī, tear in pieces.

lapis, idis, m., stone.

Latīnus, ī, m., Latinus, a man's
name; also a Latin.

Latium, ī (iī), n., Latium, a part of
Italy.

lātrō, ī, bark.

laudō, ī, praise.

laus, laudis, f., praise.

Lāvinia, ae, f., Lavinia, wife of
Aeneas.

Lāvinium, ī (iī), Lavinium, a town.

laxō, ī, loosen.

lectus, ī, m., couch.

lēgātīō, ōnis, f., embassy.

lēgātus, ī, m., lieutenant; envoy.

legiō, ōnis, f., legion.

legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, choose, read.

Lentulus, ī, m., Lentulus, a man's
name.

lentus, a, um, slow.

leō, ōnis, m., lion.

lētālis, e, fatal.

levis, e, light.

lēx, lēgis, f., law.

- liber, libri, m., *book*.
 liber, libera, liberum, *free*.
 liberi, ōrum, m. pl., *children* (free born).
 liberō, 1, *free; acquit*.
 libertās, tātis, f., *liberty*.
 licet, impera, *it is permitted* (§ 202).
 ligneus, a, um, *wooden*.
 Lilybaeum, i, n., *Lilybaeum, a promontory of Sicily*.
 litterae, ōrum, f. pl., *a letter*.
 litterarius, a, um, *of or belonging to reading and writing*.
 litus, oris, n., *shore*.
 locus, i, m.; pl., loca, ōrum, n., *place; family*.
 longē, adv., *far*.
 longitūdō, inis, f., *length*.
 longus, a, um, *long*.
 loquor, loqui, locutus sum, *speak*.
 Lūcius, i (ii), m., *Lucius, a man's name*.
 Lucrētia, ae, f., *Lucretia, a woman's name*.
 Lucrētius, i (ii), *Lucretius, a man's name*.
 ludus, i, m., *game, school; pl. ludī, ōrum, m., (public) games*.
 lūgē, ōre, lūxi, luctus, *mourn*.
 lūmen, minis, n., *light*.
 lūna, ae, f., *moon*.
 lupa, ae, f., *she-wolf*.
 lupus, i, m., *wolf*.
 lūstrō, 1, *review (an army)*.
 Lutātius, i (ii), *Lutatius, a man's name*.
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light; primā lūce, at daybreak*.
 Lysander, dri, m., *Lysander, a Spartan commander*.
 M., abbreviation for Mārcus, i, m., *Marcus, a man's name*.
 magis, more, rather, comp. of māgnopere.
 magister, tri, m., *master; magister equitum, master of the horses*.
 magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate*.
 magnificentia, ae, f., *splendor*.
 magnitūdō, inis, f., *size*.
 magnopere, *greatly, earnestly* (§ 79, 1).
 magnus, a, um, *large, great*.
 major, larger, greater, comp. of māgnus; major nātū, *elder (lit greater as to birth)*.
 majōrēs, um, m. (sc. nātū), *ancestors*.
 male, adv., *badly, ill* (§ 79, 1).
 maledicō, ere, dixi, dictus, *rail at*.
 mālificus, i, m., *evil doer*.
 mālī, nālī, mālū, *prefer* (§ 192).
 malus, a, um, *bad*.
 mandātum, i, n., *command, order*.
 mandō, 1, *assign*.
 maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsurus, *remain*.
 Mānlius, i (ii), *Manlius, a man's name*.
 Mantinēa, ae, f., *Mantineia, a city in Arcadia in Greece*.
 manus, ūs, f., *hand; in military sense, band, force*.
 Mārcellus, i, m., *Marcellus, a man's name*.
 Mārcius, i (ii), m., *Marcius, a man's name*.
 mare, is, n., *sea*.
 maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime*.
 maritus, i, m., *husband*.
 Mārs, Mārtis, m., *the god Mars*.
 māssa, ae, f., *mass*.
 Massilia, ae, f., *Marseilles*.
 māter, tris, f., *mother*.
 mātōna, ae, f., *matron*.
 mātrīmōnium, i (ii), n., *marriage; in mātrīmōnium dare, to give in marriage (of the father); in mātrīmōnium dūcere, to take in marriage (of the husband)*.

mātūrus, a, um, *ripe*.
maximē, especially, sup. of **magnopere**.
maximus, a, um, *greatest*, superl. of **magnus**.
medicus, i, m., *physician*.
medius, a, um, *middle*, the middle of.
mehercule, *gracious! I tell you!* lit. (so help) me Hercules!
melior, ius, *better*, comp. of **bonus**.
membrum, i, n., *member* (of the body).
meminī, inae, *remember* (§ 198).
memoria, ae, f., *memory*, *recollection*.
Menōnius, i (ii), m., *Menenius*, a man's name.
mēns, mentis, f., *mind*.
mēnsa, ae, f., *table*.
mēnsis, is, m., *month*.
mercēs, ēdis, f., *price*, *reward*.
mercor, i, dep., *purchase*.
mereō, ēre, merui, *meritus*, *deserve*.
mereor, ēri, itus sum, *deserve*.
mergō, ere, merui, *mersus*, *sink*.
Messalla, ae, m., *Messalla*, a man's name.
metō, ere, messi, *messus*, *reap*.
Mettius Fufetius, Metti (ii) Fufeti (ii), m., *Mettius Fufetius*, a man's name.
meus, a, um, *my*.
migrō, i, *move*, *move away*.
miles, itis, m., *soldier*.
militāris, e, *military*.
militia, ae, f., *military service*.
mille, indecl., *thousand* (§ 80, 4); pl., **mīlia**, ium.
miliārium, i (ii), n., *milestone*.
minimē, least (§ 79, 1).
minimus, a, um, superl. of **parvus**.
minor, less, comp. of **parvus**; *minor* nātū, *younger*.
minus, adv., *less*.

miror, āri, ātus sum, *wonder*, *admire*.
misericordia, ae, f., *pity*.
mittō, ere, misi, *missus*, *send*, *hurl*.
modo, only; just, just now; as conj., *provided that*.
modus, i, m., *manner*, *kind*.
moenia, ium, n. pl., *walls* (of a city).
molliō, ire, iui, itus, *soften*.
monēō, ēre, monui, *monitus*, *advise*, *warn*.
monitus, ūs, m., *advice*.
mōns, montis, m., *mountain*, *hill*.
mōnstrō, i, *show*.
mora, ae, f., *delay*.
morbus, i, m., *disease*.
moror, āri, morātus sum, *tarry*, *delay*.
mors, mortis, f., *death*.
morsus, ūs, m., *bite*.
mortuus, a, um, *dead*.
mōs, mōris, m., *custom*; pl., **mōrēs**, *character*.
Mosa, ae, m., the river *Meuse*.
mōtus, ūs, m., *revolt*.
moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, *move*; *touch*.
mox, *presently*; *soon*; *afterwards*.
Mūcius, i (ii), m., *Mucius*, a man's name.
mulier, mulieris, f., *woman*.
multitūdō, inis, f., *multitude*.
multō, by much, abl. of **multum**.
multus, a, um, *much*; pl., *many*.
māniō, ire, iui (ii), itus, *fortify*.
mānitiō, ōnis, f., *fortification*.
mānus, eris, n., *reward*.
mūrus, i, m., *wall*.
mūs, mūris, c., *mouse*.
nam, for.
nanciscor, i, nactus sum, *procure*.
nārrō, i, *tell*.
nāscor, i, nātus sum, *be born*.
nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation*, *tribe*.

- natō, 1, *swim*.
 nātūra, ae, f., *nature*.
 (nātus, ūs), m., only in the Abl. sing., nātū, *as to birth* (in phrases expressing age).
 nāvālis, e, *naval*.
 nāvis, is, f., *ship, boat*.
 nē, not; *lest; that . . . not; from* (after verbs of *hindering*); nē . . . quidem, *not even, emphatic negative, emphasizing the expression placed between nē and quidem*.
 -ne, enclitic interrog. particle, asking for information.
 nec (neque), *nor*.
 necesse est, impera., *it is necessary*.
 negligē, ere, lēxi, lēctus, *neglect*.
 negō, 1, *deny, say "no."*
 negōtium, i (if), n., *business; trouble*.
 nēmō, o., defective noun, *no one*; acc. nēminem, dat. nēminī; other cases lacking.
 nepōs, ōtis, m., *grandson*.
 Neptūnus, i, m., the god *Neptune*.
 neque (nec), *nor, and not*.
 neuter, tra, trum, *neither* (§ 61).
 nihil, indecl., *nothing*.
 nihilō, abl., *by nothing; nihilō minus, none the less*.
 nisi, *unless, except*.
 nōbilis, e, *noble*.
 nōbilitās, tātis, f., *nobility*.
 nocēō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *injure, harm*.
 nocturnus, a, um, *at night*.
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling* (§ 192).
 nōmen, inia, n., *name*.
 nōminātīm, adv., *by name*.
 nōn, not; nōn solum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*.
 nōnāgēsīmus, a, um, *ninetieth*.
 nōndum, *not yet*.
 nōne, interrog. particle expecting answer "yes."
 nōnnāllus, a, um, *some*.
 nōscō, ere, nōvī, *become acquainted with; the perfect has present meaning; I know*.
 noster, tra, trum, *our*.
 notābilis, e, *memorable, notable*.
 novem, indecl. adj., *nine*.
 novus, a, um, *new*.
 nox, noctis, f., *night*.
 nūbō, ere, nūpī. nūpta, *veil one's self (for the bridegroom); marry, used only of the woman*.
 nūllus, a, um, *no* (§ 61).
 num, interrog. particle expecting answer "no"; in indirect questions, *whether*.
 Numa Pompilius, Numae Pompili (if), *Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome*.
 numerus, i, m., *number*.
 Numitor, ōris, m., *Numitor*.
 numquam, *never*.
 nunc, *now*.
 nuncupō, 1, *name, call*.
 nūntiō, 1, *announce, report*.
 nūntius, i (if), m., *messenger*.
 nūtriō, ire, ivī, itus, *nurse, take care of*.
 nympha, ae, f., *nympha*.
 ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of*.
 obeō, ire, īi, itus, *meet; also used for mortem obire (lit., meet death), die*.
 oberrō, 1, *wander about*.
 obligō, 1, *lay under obligation*.
 obliviscor, ī, oblitus sum, *forget*.
 oboediō, ire, ivī, itum, *obey*.
 obruō, ere, ruī, rutus, *overwhelm*.
 obsecrō, 1, *entreat*.
 obses, idis, c., *hostage*.
 obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *blockade*.
 obsidiō, ōnis, f., *siege*.
 obtestor, āri, ātus sum, *adjure*.

obtineš, šre, uī, tentus, occupy.
hold, obtain, secure; prevail.
 occaeoš, 1, blind.
 occāsiš, šnis, f., occasion, opportunity.
 occidš, ere, occidī, occisus, kill.
 occupš, 1, take possession of, seize; occupy.
 occurš, ere, curri, cursum, run to meet.
 octāvus, a, um, eighth; octavus decimus, eighteenth.
 octingenti, ae, a, eight hundred.
 Octodūrus, 1, m., Octodurus, a city of the Veragri.
 octōgintā, indecl., eighty.
 oculus, 1, m., eye.
 ōdī, ōdisse, hate (§ 198).
 offerš, ferre, obtulī, oblātus, offer; aš offerre, volunteer.
 officium, 1 (ii), n., duty.
 ōlim, adv., formerly, once upon a time.
 omnīnš, adv., altogether; with negatives, at all.
 omnia, e, all, every.
 onerārius, a, um, burden-bearing; nāvš onerārius, transports.
 opera, ae, f., assistance.
 opiniš, šnis, f., opinion, expectation.
 oportet, šre, oportuit, it behooves (§ 202).
 oppidum, 1, n., town, walled town.
 opportūnus, a, um, fit, opportune.
 opprimš, ere, pressi, pressus, overwhelm.
 oppugnš, 1, attack, assault.
 opa, opia, f. (nom. sing. is not used), power, help; in pl., resources.
 optimē, sup. of bene (§ 79, 1).
 optimus, a, um, sup. of bonus (§ 78).
 optiš, šnis, f., choice.
 optš, 1, desire.
 opus, indecl., n., need; opus est, it is necessary; there is need.
 opus, eris, n., work, fortification.

šra, ae, f., coast.
 ōrāculum, 1, n., oracle.
 ōrātiš, šnis, f., speech.
 ōrātor, ōris, m., orator; envoy.
 orbis, orbis, m., circle; orbis terrārum, the world.
 ōrdinš, 1, institute.
 ōrdš, inis, m., rank.
 orior, oriri, ortus sum, arise.
 ōrnš, 1, adorn.
 ōrš, 1, beseech.
 ortus, perf. participle of orior.
 os, ossis, n., bone.
 ostendš, ere, tendī, tentus, show, explain.
 ostentum, 1, n., portent.
 Ōstia, ae, f., Ostia, a Latin town at mouth of the Tiber.
 ōstium, 1 (ii), n., mouth.
 ōtišus, a, um, free from.
 ovis, ovis, f., sheep.
 ōvum, 1, n., egg.

P., abbreviation of Pāblius.
 pābulum, 1, n., forage, food (of animals).
 paene, almost, nearly.
 paenitet, šre, paenituit, imper., it causes regret (§ 202).
 palūs, lūdis, f., marsh.
 pandš, ere, pandī, passus, unfold, open.
 Papīrius, 1 (ii), m., Papirius, a man's name.
 pār, gen. paris, equal.
 parš, ere, peperci, parsūrus, spare (§ 220, II, a).
 pariš, ere, peperī, partus, bring forth; lay (an egg).
 parš, 1, prepare, get ready.
 pars, partis, f., part; side.
 parvus, a, um, small.
 pāsoš, ere, pāvi, pāstus, feed; depascor, pāsci, pāstus sum,

- passus, ūs, m., *pace* (five feet).
 pāstor, ōris, m., *herdsman, shepherd*.
 patefaciō, ere, fēci, factus, *open*.
 pateō, ēre, uī, *lie open*.
 pater, patris, m., *father*.
 paternus, a, um, *paternal; of one's father*.
 patior, ī, passus sum, *suffer; allow*.
 patria, ae, f., *country, fatherland*.
 patrimonium, ī (īī), n., *inheritance, property*.
 pauci, ae, a, *few, used only in pl.*
 paucitās, ātis, f., *fewness, small number*.
 paulō, abl., *by a little*.
 paulum, *a little*.
 pāx, ācis, f., *peace*.
 pecūnia, ae, f., *money*.
 pedes, itis, m., *foot-soldier; in pl., infantry*.
 peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry*.
 pelliciō, ere, lexī, lectus, *allure, entice*.
 pellis, is, f., *skin, hide*.
 pellō, ere, populī, pulsus, *drive; drive out, banish; rout, defeat*.
 Peloponnēsus, ī, f., *Peloponnesus, the southern part of Greece*.
 pendeō, ēre, pependī, *to hang*.
 per, prep. w. acc., *through, by means of, through the instrumentality of; on account of; during*.
 percontor, ī, dep., *ask*.
 percutiō, ere, cussī, cussus, *strike*.
 perdō, ere, didī, ditus, *lose*.
 perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *conduct*.
 pereō, īre, īī, itūrus, *perish* (§ 197).
 perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *carry through, convey, endure* (§ 188).
 perficiō, ere, fēci, factus, *accomplish*.
 perfidia, ae, f., *treachery*.
 perfuga, ae, m., *deserter*.
 perfugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee*.
 pergō, ere, rēxī, rōctus, *proceed*.
 periculum, ī, n., *danger*.
 permittō, ere, misi, missus, *permit, grant, cede* (§ 220, II, a).
 permūtātiō, ōnis, f., *exchange*.
 perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual*.
 Persa, ae, m., *a Persian*.
 persequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow up*.
 persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *persuade*.
 perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *terrify*.
 perturbō, ī, *agitate*.
 perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come, arrive*.
 pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.
 petō, ere, īvī (īī), itus, *seek, request; attack*.
 philosophus, ī, m., *philosopher*.
 Pīso, ōnis, m., *Piso, a man's name*.
 placeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *please*.
 placidus, a, um, *tranquil*.
 plānitēs, ēī, f., *plain*.
 plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people*.
 plēnus, a, um, *full*.
 plērīque, aeque, aque, *most*.
 plūrēs, a, *more; several; plural of plūs* (§ 68).
 plūrimus, a, um, sup. of multus (§ 73).
 plūs, comp. of multus (§§ 68, 73).
 poena, ae, f., *penalty, punishment*.
 Poenus, a, um, *Carthaginian*.
 polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise*.
 Pompejus, Pompei, m., *Pompey, a man's name*.
 Pompilius, ī (īī), m., *Pompilius, a man's name*.
 pondus, eris, n., *weight*.
 pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, set up, establish; castra pōnere, pitch a camp*.
 pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.
 Pontius, ī (īī), m., *Pontius, a man's name*.
 populus, ī, m., *people*.
 porrigō, ere, ēxī, ēctus, *stretch out*.
 Porsona, ae, m., *Porsona, a king of Etruria*.

- porta, ae, f., *gate*.
 portō, 1, *carry*.
 portus, ūs, m., *harbor*.
 poscō, ere, poposci, *demand*.
 possessiō, ōnis, f., *possession*.
 possideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *possess*.
 possum, posse, potui, *be able, can* (§ 183).
 post, adv., *afterwards*.
 post, prep. with acc., *after*.
 postea, *afterwards*.
 posterus, a, um, *following* (§ 74, 2);
 posterī, ōrum, m., *descendants*.
 postquam, conj., *after*.
 postrēmō, adv., *finally*.
 pōstridiū, adv., *on the next day*.
 postulō, 1, *demand*.
 Postumius, i (ii), m., *Postumius*, a man's name.
 potēns, entis, pres. participle of possum, used as adj., *powerful*.
 potestās, ātis, f., *power*.
 potior, iri, itus sum, *gain possession of*.
 praecedō, ere, cessi, cessurus, *precede*.
 praecipio, ere, cōpi, ceptus, *enjoin*.
 praecipitō, 1, *hurl down headlong*.
 praeda, ae, f., *booty*.
 praedō, ōnis, m., *robber*.
 praefero, ferre, tuli, latus, *choose, prefer* (§ 188).
 praeficio, ere, feci, factus, *put in charge, place in command* (§ 220, III).
 praemium, i (ii), n., *reward*.
 Praeneste, is, n., *Praeneste*, a Latin town.
 praesens, praesentis, *present*, pres. participle of praesum, used as adj.
 praesaepes, is, n., *manger*.
 praesidium, i (ii), *garrison*.
 praestantia, ae, f., *preëminence*.
 praestāns, gen. stantis, *eminent, excellent*.
 praestō, āre, itī, itus, *perform, show*.
 praesum. esse, fui, *be in charge of* (§ 182).
 praeter, prep. w. acc., *except, besides*.
 praeterea, *besides*.
 praetereō, ire, ii, iturus, *pass by* (§ 197).
 praetor, ōris, m., *praetor*.
 prātum, ī, n., *meadow*.
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus, *press, crowd*.
 pretium, i (ii), n., *price*.
 (prex, precis), f., *prayer* (nom. and gen. sing. not used).
 primō, *first, firstly*.
 primum, *first, for the first time*.
 primus, a, um, *first*; superl. of comp. prior (§ 74).
 princeps, ipis, m., *chief*.
 prior, us, *former, before (another)*.
 Priscus, ī, m., *Priscus*, a man's name.
 pristinus, a, um, *pristine, former*.
 priusquam, *before*.
 privātus, a, um, *private*; as noun, privātus, ī, m., *a private citizen*.
 prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; for, instead of*.
 probō, 1, *approve*.
 Procās, ae, m., *Procas*, a king of Alba.
 prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus, *advance*.
 procul, *far, far off*.
 prōcūrō, 1, *care for, have charge of*.
 prōcurrō, ere, cucurri, cursum, *run forward*.
 prōditor, ōris, m., *traitor*.
 proelium, i (ii), n., *battle*.
 prōferō, ferre, tuli, latus, *carry before one*.
 proficiscor, ī, profectus sum, *set out*.
 profugiō, ere, fugi, fugiturus, *flee, escape; flee for refuge*.

prōgredior, I, gressus sum, *advance, go forward.*

prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *keep away, keep off.*

prōiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *throw forward; cast.*

prōmissus, a, um, *long, flowing.*

prōmittō, ere, misi, missus, *promise.*

prōmunturium, I (ii), n., *promontory.*

prōpāgō, I, *propagate, continue.*

properō, I, *hasten.*

prōpōnō, ere, posui, positus, *propose.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

prōspectō, I, *look out upon.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfuiturus, *benefit (§ 182).*

prōtinus, *forthwith, straightway.*

prōvideō, ēre, vidī, visus, *provide, take care.*

prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*

prōvocātiō, ōnia, f., *challenge.*

prōvocō, I, *challenge.*

proximus, a, um, *nearest, next (§ 74, 1).*

prūdēns, *wise, sensible.*

Pūblicola, ae, m., *Publicola, a man's*

NAME.

pūblicus, a, um, *public.*

Pūblius, I (ii), m., *Publius, a man's*

NAME.

puer, I, m., *boy.*

puerilis, e, *youthful.*

pueritia, ae, f., *boyhood.*

pugna, ae, f., *battle.*

pugnō, I, *fight.*

pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful.*

pullus, I, m., *nestling.*

pulsus, perf. pass. participle of pellō.

Pulvillus, I, m., *Pulvillus, a man's*

NAME.

Pūnicus, a, um, *Punic.*

pūniō, ire, ivi, itus, *punish.*

pūpillus, I, m., *ward.*

pusillus, a, um, *weak.*

putō, I, *think.*

Pyrrhus, I, m., *Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.*

quā, adv., *where.*

quadrāgēsimus, a, um, *fortieth.*

quadrāgintā, indecl., *forty.*

quadrīngentēsimus, a, um, *four hundredth.*

quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, *inquire.*

quālis, e, rel., *as; such as; interrog., of what sort?*

1. quam, *how?*

2. quam, *than.*

quamquam, *although.*

quamvis, *though, although.*

quandō, interrog., *when.*

quantum, *how much; as much as.*

quantus, a, um, *how great; as great as.*

quārō, rel. and interrog., *wherefore.*

quārtus, a, um, *fourth.*

quasi, *as if.*

quatiō, ere, quassi, quassus, *shake.*

quattuor, indecl., *four.*

quattuordecim, indecl., *fourteen.*

-que, enclitic conj., *and.*

querēla, ae, f., *complaint.*

queror, I, questus sum, *complain.*

quī, quae, quod, *who, which.*

quia, conj., *because.*

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever (§ 102, 4).*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, *a certain (§ 102).*

quidem, *indeed, even; of course; nō . . . quidem, not even.*

quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet, *any you please (§ 102, 1).*

Quinctius, I (ii), m., *Quinctius, a man's name.*

quingenti, ae, a, *five hundred*.

quingentā, indecl., *fifty*.

quinque, indecl., *five*.

quintus, a, um, *fifth*.

Quintus, i, m., *Quintus*, a man's name.

quis, quid, interr. pron., *who, what?*

quis, qua (quae), quid, indef. pron., *any* (§ 102).

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), *any, any one* (§ 102).

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quicque), *each* (§ 102).

1. quō, rel. and interr. adv., *whither*.

2. quō, conj., *in order that*.

quod, *because*, on the ground that.

quōminus, *from* (after verbs of *hindering*).

quondam, *formerly, once upon a time*.

quoniam, conj., *inasmuch as*.

quoque, *also*, always placed after the word it modifies.

rāna, ae, f., *frog*.

rapiō, ere, uī, tus, *seize*.

raptor, ōris, m., *one who seizes*.

ratiō, ōnis, f., *reason*.

recōdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *retire*.

recēns, gen. recentis, *recent*.

recipiō, ere, cōpī, ceptus, *take back, receive*; with reflexive aō, *to retreat*.

recūsō, 1, *refuse*.

reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, *return, give back; render, make*.

redeō, ire, itūrus, *return, go back* (§ 197).

redigō, ere, ōgī, āctus, *reduce*.

redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *ransom*.

redintegrō, 1, *renew*.

redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead back*.

referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, *bring back, return* (§ 188).

reſciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *rebuild*.

reſuō, ere, *flow back*.

regiō, ōnis, f., *region*.

rēgius, a, um, *of the king; regal*.

rēgnō, 1, *reign*.

rēgnum, i, n., *regal power, kingdom*.

regredior, i, gressus sum, *march back, return*.

Rēgulus, i, m., *Regulus*, a man's name.

reiciō, ere, rejēcī, jectus, *hurl back*.

relātus, perf. pass. participle of referō.

relictus, perf. pass. participle of relinquō.

religiō, ōnis, f., *religion*.

relinquō, ere, liquī, lictus, *leave, leave behind*.

reliquus, qua, quum, *remaining*.

remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain*.

rēmex, igis, m., *rower*.

removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *remove*.

Remus, i, m., *Remus*, brother of Romulus.

renovō, 1, *renew*.

renūntiō, 1, *bring back word*.

repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repel, repulse*.

repente, *suddenly*.

repentīnus, a, um, *sudden*.

reperiō, ire, repperī, reportus, *discover, find*.

repudiō, 1, *reject*.

rēs, rei, f., *thing, affair, circumstance*.

rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissus, *tear down*.

resistō, ere, restitī, resist (§ 220, II, a).

respiciō, ere, exī, ectus, *look back*.

respondeō, ēre, respondi, respōnsus, *answer, reply*.

rēs publica, gen. rei publicae, f., *state, republic*.

respuō, ere, uī, *reject*.
 restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *restore*.
 retineō, ere, uī, tentus, *retain*.
 reverentia, ae, f., *reverence*.
 revertor, ī, *return*.
 revocō, ī, *recall*.
 rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.
 Rhea Silvia, gen. Rheae Silviae, f.,
Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus
 and Remus.
 Rhēnus, ī, m., *Rhine*.
 Rhodanus, ī, m., *Rhone*.
 rideō, ēre, risi, risurus, *laugh*.
 ripa, ae, f., *bank*.
 rivus, ī, m., *stream*.
 rixor, āri, ātus, quarrel,
wrangle.
 rōbur, oris, n., *strength*.
 rogō, ī, *ask*.
 Rōma, ae, f., *Rome*.
 Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman*; as noun,
a Roman.
 Rōmulus, ī, m., *Romulus*.
 Rullianus, ī, m., *Rullianus*.
 rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus, *break*,
break down.
 ruō, ere, rūi, ruiturus, *rush*.
 rūsus, *again*.
 rūsticus, ī, m., *farmer*.

Sabinus, a, um, *Sabine*.
 Sabinus, ī, m., *Sabinus*, a lieutenant
 of Caesar.
 sacer, cra, crum, *sacred*; in pl.,
sacra, ōrum, n., *sacred rites*.
 sacerdos, ōtis, c., *priest, priestess*.
 saepe, *often*.
 saliō, īre, salui, leap, jump, spring.
 salūs, lūtis, f., *safety*.
 salūtō, ī, salute, hail.
 salvus, a, um, *safe*.
 Samnis, itis, m., *a Samnite*.
 Sardinia, ae, f., *Sardinia*.
 satelles, itis, m., *a body-guard*.
 satis, adv. and noun, *enough*.

Sāturnia, ae, f., *Saturnia*, name of
 a citadel.
 Sātarnus, ī, m., the god *Saturn*.
 saxum, ī, n., *rock*.
 Scaevola, ae, m., *Scaevola*, a man's
 name.
 scelestus, a, um, *wicked*.
 scelus, eris, n., *crime*.
 sciō, īre, scivī, scītus, *know*.
 scriba, ae, m., *secretary*.
 scribō, ere, scripī, scriptus, *write*;
 of laws, *draw up*.
 scūtum, ī, n., *shield*.
 sē, reflexive, *he*; *himself, herself*
 (§ 86).
 sēcōdō, ere, cessī, cessurus, *secede*,
withdraw.
 secundus, a, um, *second*.
 sed, *but*.
 sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessurus, *sit, perch*.
 sēdēs, is, f., *seat*.
 sēditio, ōnis, f., *uprising, mutiny*.
 seges, itis, f., *corn-field*.
 semper, *always*.
 senātor, tōris, m., *senator*.
 senātus, ūs, m., *senate*.
 senex, senis, m., *old man*; as adj.,
old.
 Senonēs, um, m., the *Senones*, a
 Gallic tribe.
 sententia, ae, f., *opinion, senti-*
ment.
 sentiō, īre, sēnī, sēnsus, *feel, per-*
ceive.
 sepeliō, ēre, fvi, sepultus, *bury*.
 septem, indecl., *seven*.
 septimus, a, um, *seventh*.
 septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred*.
 septuāgintā, indecl., *seventy*.
 Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., *Sequani*, a
 Gallic tribe.
 sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow*;
seek.
 sermō, ōnis, m., *conversation*.
 serpō, ere, serpsī, creep.

Servius Tullius, Servi (ii) Tulli (ii),
Servius Tullius, sixth king of Rome.

servō, 1, save; preserve.

servus, 1, m., slave.

sescenti, ae, a, six hundred.

sēta, ae, f., hair.

sex, indecl., six.

sexāgintā, indecl., sixty.

sextus, a, um, sixth; sextus decimus, sixteenth.

sī, if.

sic, so (of manner).

siccus, a, um, dry.

Sicilia, ae, f., Sicily.

sidus, eris, n., constellation; pl., the stars.

significō, 1, show; mean.

signum, 1, n., standard.

silentium, 1 (ii), n., silence.

silva, ae, f., forest.

Silvius, 1 (ii), m., Silvius, a man's name.

similis, e, like.

simul, together, at the same time.

simul ac (atque), as soon as.

sīn, conj., but if.

sine, prep. w. abl., without.

singulāris, e, single, singular, special.

singulī, ae, a, one at a time, each.

sinister, tra, trum, left, left hand.

socer, erī, m., father-in-law.

societās, tātis, f., partnership.

socius, 1 (ii), m., ally, comrade.

sōl, is, m., sun.

soleō, ēre, solitus sum, semi-dep., be accustomed.

sōlitudō, dinis, f., solitude.

sōlum, only; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.

sōlus, a, um, alone, only (§ 61).

solvō, ere, solvi, solūtus, loose; of ships, unmoor; nāvēsolvere, set sail.

somnus, 1, m., sleep.

sonitus, ūs, m., sound.

sonus, 1, m., sound.

spatium, 1 (ii), n., space; time.

spatiōsus, a, um, spacious, roomy.

spectō, 1, look on.

spērō, 1, hope, hope for; governs the acc.

spēs, spei, f., hope.

spoliō, 1, despoil.

Spurius, 1 (ii), m., Spurius, a man's name.

stāgnum, 1, n., lake, lagoon.

statim, at once, immediately.

statua, ae, f., statue.

statuō, ere, uī, ūtus, decide.

statūra, ae, f., stature.

stilus, 1, m., stylus, instrument used for writing.

stō, āre, stēti, stātūrus, stand.

strēnuus, a, um, energetic.

stultitia, ae, f., folly.

suādeō, ēre, suāsi, suāsūrus, urge, advise.

sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., under.

subducō, ere, dūxi, ductus, withdraw, lead away; snatch away.

subeō, īre, īi, itūrus, approach (§ 197).

subigō, ere, ēgi, āctus, subdue.

subitō, suddenly.

sublevō, 1, relieve.

sublimis, e, high, lofty; in sublime, on high.

submitto, ere, misi, missus, send, despatch.

subrideō, ēre, risi, risum, smile.

subsidiū, 1 (ii), n., assistance.

succēdō, ere, cessi, cessūrus, follow, succeed.

suī, self, oneself (§ 86, 1).

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be.

summus, highest, greatest, top of (§ 283); sup. of superus (§ 74, 2).

sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, take.

super, prep. w. acc., *above*.
superbia, ae, f., *pride, haughtiness*.
superbus, a, um, *proud, haughty*.
superior, us, *higher, upper, above*;
 comp. of **superus** (§ 74, 2).
superō, 1, *overcome, defeat, surpass*;
be superior.
supersum, esse, fui, *remain, be over,*
survive.
superveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, *come*
up, arrive.
supplicium, ī (ii), n., *torture, pun-*
ishment.
suprā, prep. w. acc., *above*.
suprēmus, a, um, *superl. of superus*
 (§ 74, 2).
suscipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, *under-*
take, receive.
suspiciō, ōnis, f., *suspicion*.
suspicio, āri, ātus sum, *suspect*.
sustineō, ēre, uī, *withstand*.
sustulī, perf. ind. act. of **tollō**.
suis, a, um, *his; her; its; their*.
Syrācūsae, ārum, f., *Syracuse, a*
city of Sicily.
Syrācūsānus, a, um, *Syracusan*.

T., abbreviation of **Titus**.
talentum, ī, n., *a talent* (about
 \$1200).
tālis, e, *such*.
tam, so (of degree).
tamen, *nevertheless, yet*.
Tanaquil, ilis, f., *Tanaquil, wife of*
Tarquinius Priscus.
tandem, *at length*.
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch*.
tantum (n. of **tantus**), *so much*.
tantus, a, um, *so great*.
tardō, 1, *retard, check*.
Tarentinus, a, um, *Tarentine*.
Tarentum, ī, n., *Tarentum, a city*.
Tarpēia, ae, f., *Tarpeia, a woman's*
 name.
Tarpēius, a, um, *Tarpeian*.

Tarquiniī, ōrum, m. pl., *Tarquiniī,*
a city.
Tarquinius, ī (ii), m., *Tarquin, a*
Roman king.
tectum, ī, n., *roof*.
Telesinus, ī, m., *Telesinus, a man's*
name.
tēlum, ī, n., *javelin*.
temere, *rashly*.
tempestās, tātis, f., *tempest*.
templum, ī, n., *temple*.
temptō, 1, *attempt, make trial of*.
tempus, oris, n., *time*.
tendō, ere, tetendi, tentus, *stretch*;
stretch one's course; go.
teneō, ēre, uī, *hold*.
tergum, ī, n., *back; & tergō, from*
behind.
terra, ae, f., *land, a land*.
terreō, ēre, uī, *it, frighten*.
territōrium, ī (ii), n., *territory*.
terror, ōris, m., *terror, fear*.
tertius, a, um, *third*.
testūdō, inis, f., *tortoise*.
Thēbae, ārum, f., *Thebes, a city of*
Boeotia in Greece.
Themistoclēs, is, m., *Themistocles,*
an Athenian statesman.
Tiberis, is, m., *Tiber*.
timeō, ēre, uī, *fear*.
timidus, a, um, *timid*.
timor, ōris, m., *fear*.
tintinnābulum, ī, n., *bell*.
titulus, ī, m., *placard*.
Titus, ī, m., *Titus, a man's name*.
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *raise,*
pick up; take, take away.
tonitrus, ūs, m., *thunder*.
tonō, āre, tonūi, *thunder*.
Torquātus, ī, m., *Torquatus, a*
man's name.
torquēs, is, m., *necklace*.
tot, indecl., *so many*.
tōtus, a, um, *whole, entire* (§ 61).
tractō, 1, *treat*.

- trādō, ere, trādidi, trādītus, *hand*
over.
trādācō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead*
across.
trāciō, ere, jēcī, jectus (orig. trans-
sitive, *throw across, send across*),
cross over.
trāns, prep. with acc., *across*.
trānsēō, ire, īī, itus, *cross; cross*
over.
trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *transfer*.
trānsigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *pass,*
spend.
trānsiliō, ire, uī, *leap over*.
trānsmarīnus, a, um, *across the sea,*
from across the sea.
trānsnō, ī, *swim across*.
trānsportō, ī, *transport*.
trecentēsīmus, a, um, *three hun-*
dredth.
trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred*.
tredecim, indecl., *thirteen*.
trēs, tria, *three* (§ 80, 2).
Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl., *Treveri, a*
tribe of Belgians.
tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune, officer in a*
Roman legion; also a tribune of
the plebs.
tribuō, ere, uī, ātus, *assign, award;*
grant.
tribūtum, ī, n., *tax*.
tricēsīmus, a, um, *thirtieth*.
triduum, ī, n., *three days*.
trigeminī, ōrum, m. pl., *triplets*.
trīgintā, indecl., *thirty*.
trīumphō, ī, *celebrate a triumph*.
Trōja, ae, f., *Troy*.
Trōjānus, a, um, *Trojan*.
trux, gen. truciis, *savage*.
tū, tuī, *thou, you* (§ 85).
tuba, ae, f., *trumpet*.
tubicen, inis, m., *trumpeter*.
tueor, ēri, *guard, watch*.
Tullia, ae, f., *Tullia, a woman's*
name.
Tullus Hostilius, Tulli Hostilī (if),
m., *Tullus Hostilius, third king*
of Rome.
tum, then, at that time.
tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising*.
tunc, then.
turbō, ī, *disturb*.
turbulentus, a, um, *muddy*.
turpis, e, *base*.
turris, is, f., *tower*.
Tusculum, ī, n., *Tusculum, a*
town.
tūtor, ōris, m., *guardian*.
tūtus, a, um, *safe*.
tuus, a, um, *thy, your* (§ 87).
tyrannus, ī, m., *a tyrant*.
ūber, eris, n., *udder*.
ubi, rel. and interr. adv., *where;*
when.
Ubiī, ōrum, m., *Ubiī, a German*
tribe.
ubique, *everywhere*.
ulciscor, ī, ultus sum, *avenge*.
ūllus, a, um, *any* (§ 61).
ulterior, us, *farther, more distant*
(§ 74, 1).
ultrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond*.
ūnā, *together*.
unde, *whence*.
ūndēquīnquāgintā, indecl., *forty-*
nine.
undique, *from all parts or sides*.
unguentum, ī, n., *perfume*.
unguis, is, m., *talon*.
ungula, ae, f., *talon*.
ūnus, a, um, *one, alone* (§ 61).
urbānitās, tatis, f., *wit*.
urbs, urbis, f., *city*.
Usipetēs, um, m., *Usipetes, a Ger-*
man tribe.
ūsq̄ue, *even*.
ūsus, ūs, m., *use, service*.
ut, *that, in order that; with verbs of*
fearing, that not.

uter, utra, utrum, int. adj., *which* (of two)?

uterque, utraque, utrumque, gen. utriusque (cf. § 61), *each* (of two); in pl., *both* (of two parties).

ūtilla, e, *useful*.

utinam, affirmative particle (§ 305).

ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use* (§ 258, 1).

utrum, *whether*.

ūva, ae, f., *grapes, a bunch of grapes*.

uxor, ōris, f., *wife*.

vadum, ī, n., *ford, shallow water*.

vāgītus, ūs, m., *crying*.

valeō, ēre, ūi, valitūrus, *avail, prevail*.

Valerius, ī (ii), m., *Valerius*, a man's name.

validius, adv. (comp. of valdō), *more vigorously*.

vallis, vallis, f., *valley*.

vāllum, ī, n., *intrenchment*.

vāstō, ī, *lay waste*.

Vatinius, ī (ii), m., *Vatinius*, a man's name.

Veientānus, a, um, *Veientine*.

Veientēs, ium, m., *Veientines* (inhabitants of Veii).

vēndō, ere, didi, ditus, *sell*.

venēnum, ī, n., *poison*.

Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., *Venetī*, a Gallic tribe.

veniō, īre, vēni, ventum, *come*.

venter, tris, m., *stomach*.

ventus, ī, m., *wind*.

vēr, vēria, n., *spring*.

verber, eris, n., *blow*.

verberō, ī, *beat, strike*.

verbum, ī, n., *word*.

vereor, ārī, itus sum, *fear*.

vērō, *indeed, but*.

versor, ārī, ātus sum, *be engaged in*.

vertō, ere, verti, versus, *turn*; *terga vertere, flee*.

vescor, ī, *feed upon*.

Vesta, ae, f., the goddess *Vesta*.

Vestālis, is, adj., *Vestal*.

vester, vestra, vestrum, *your*.

Veturia, ae, f., *Veturia*, a woman's name.

Veturius, ī (ii), m., *Veturius*, a man's name.

vetus, gen. veteris, *old, long-standing*.

vexō, ī, *harass, annoy; ravage*.

via, ae, f., *way, road*.

vicāsimus, a, um, *twentieth*.

victor, ōris, m., *victor*.

victōria, ae, f., *victory*.

vicus, ī, m., *village*.

videō, ēre, vidī, visus, *see; in pass., be seen; seem, appear*.

vigilia, ae, f., *watch* (of the night).

vīginti, indecl., *twenty*.

vincō, īre, vinxī, victus, *bind, tie*.

vincō, ere, vici, victus, *conquer*.

vinculum, ī, n., *chain*.

vindex, icis, m., *champion*.

vindicō, ī, *claim, defend, protect*.

vinca, ae, f., *vineyard, trellis*.

vinum, ī, n., *wine*.

vir, ī, m., *man*.

vīrēs, pl. of vis

virga, ae, f., *rod, switch*.

Virginia, ae, f., *Virginia*, a woman.

Virginus, ī (ii), m., *Virginus*, a man's name.

virgō, inis, f., *virgin, maiden*.

virgula, ae, f., *rod*.

virtūs, tūtis, f., *valor, virtue*.

vīs, via, f. (acc. vim), *violence; number; vim facere, do violence, violate; pl. vīrēs, iam, strength*.

visus, perf. pass. participle of videō.

vita, ae, f., *life*.

vītō, ī, *avoid*.

vix, *scarcely, with difficulty*.

vocō, ī, *call, summon; name*.

1. volō, I, *wish*.

2. volō, velle. volui, *wish, be willing* (§ 192).

Volsci, ōrum, m. pl., *Volsci*, a Latin tribe.

volucer, eris, cre, *flying, capable of flight*.

Volumnia, ae, f., *Volumnia*, a woman's name.

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, word, exclamation*.

vulnerō, I, *wound*.

vulnus, eris, n., *wound*.

vulpēs, is, f., *fox*.

vultus, ūs, m., *countenance; look*.

Xanthippus, i, m., *Xanthippus*, a man's name.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

- abandon, *dēserō, ere, serui, uertus.*
 (able), be able, *possum, posse, potui.*
 absent, be absent, *absum, esse, āful, āfutūrus.*
 (account), on account of, *propter, prep. w. acc.*
 accuse, *accūsō, 1.*
 across, *trāns, prep. w. acc.*
 adjudge, *jūdicō, 1.*
 advance, *prōgredior, 1, gressus sum.*
 advice, *cōsiliū, 1 (II), n.*
 after (*adv.*), *post.*
 after (*conj.*), *postquam.*
 after, post, *prep. w. acc.*
 afterwards, *postea.*
 against, *contrā, prep. w. acc.*
 all, *omnia, e.*
 almost, *paene.*
 already, *jam.*
 although, though, *quamquam; quamvis; cum.*
 always, *semper.*
 ancestors, *maiores, um, m.*
 and, *et; -que (enclitic); atque.*
 announce, *nūtiō, 1.*
 another, *alius, a, ud.*
 answer, *respondeō, āre, spondi, spōnsum.*
 any, *ullus, a, um (§ 61).*
 anybody, anyone, anything, *quisquam, quaequam, quidquam; quis, quid.*
 any you please, *quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet (§ 102).*
 appoint, *dicō, ere, dixi, dictus; lit.,*
 approach, *aditus, ūs, m.*
 approach, *v., appropinquō, 1; adeō ire, II, itus.*
 approve, *probō, 1.*
 Ariovistus, *Ariovistus, 1, m.*
 arm, *armō, 1.*
 army, *exercitus, ūs, m.*
 army on the march, *agmen, minis, n.*
 as long as, *dum.*
 as soon as, *simul atque (ac).*
 ask, *rogō, 1.*
 assemble (*intrans.*), *conveniō, ire, vēni, ventum.*
 assistance, *subsidiū, 1 (II), n.; auxillium, 1 (II), n.*
 (at hand), be at hand, *adsum, esse, ādful, ādfutūrus.*
 at once, *statim.*
 Athens, *Athēnae, ārum, f.*
 attack, *adorior, iri, ortus sum.*
 attack, assault (*a town*), *oppugnō, 1.*
 avoid, *vitō, 1.*
 bad, *malus, a, um.*
 barbarian (*adj.*), *barbarus, a, um; (noun), barbarus, 1, m.*
 battle, *proelium, 1 (II), n.*
 be, *sum, esse, fui, futūrus.*
 be able, *possum, posse, potui (§ 183).*
 bear, *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.*
 beast of burden, *jumentum, 1, n.*
 because, *quod; quia; cum (§ 319).*
 become, *fiō, fieri, factus sum.*
 before (*prep. and adv.*), *ante.*
 before (*conj.*), *antequam, priusquam*
 begin, *coepl, coeplase (§ 196).*

behoove, it behooves, oportet, ēre, oportuit (§ 202).

Belgians, Belgae, ārum, m.

believe, crēdō, ere, crēdidi, crēditus.

betake oneself, cōferō, ferre, tuli, collātus, with the reflexive pron.

better, melius.

between, inter, *prep. w. acc.*

blame, culpō, āre, āvi, ātus.

boat, nāvis, is, f.

booty, praeda, ae, f.

born, be born, nāscor, ī, nātus sum.

born, nātus, a, um.

both, each, uterque, utraque, utrumque.

boundary, finis, is, m.

boy, puer, eri, m.

brave, fortis, e.

bravely, fortiter; *from the adj.*, fortis, e.

bridge, pōns, pontis, m.

brief, brevis, a.

bring, afferō, ferre, attuli, allātus.

bring about, efficiō, ere, fēcī, factus.

bring against, inferō, ferre, tuli, illātus, with *dat. of indirect obj.* (§ 220, III).

bring back, referō, ferre, tuli, lātus.

Britain, Britannia, ae, f.

brother, frāter, tris, m.

by (*of personal agent*), ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*

Caesar, Caesar, is, m.

call (*name*), appellō, ī.

call (*summon*), vocō, ī.

call together, convocō, ī.

camp, castra, ōrum, n.

can (*be able*), possum, posse, potui.

captive, captivus, ī, m.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpi, captus.

cause, causa, ae, f.

cavalry, equitēs, um, m. *pl. of equestis*; *of cavalry*, equestrian, equester, tris, tre.

cease, dēstīdō, ere, dēstiti.

certain, certain one, quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam (§ 102).

charge, be in charge, praesum, esse, fui, *construed with dat.* (§ 220, II, a).

charge, put in charge, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, factus, *construed with dat.* (§ 220, III).

children, liberī, ōrum, m.

choose, dēligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus.

circumstance, rēs, ei, f.

citizen, fellow citizen, civis, is, m.

city, urbs, urbis, f.

coast, ōra, ae, f.

cohort, cohors, rtis, f.

come, veniō, ire, vēni, ventum.

command (*noun*), mandātum, ī, n.

command (*verb*), imperō, ī.

commander, imperātor, ōra, m.

common, communis, e.

compel, cōgō, ere, cōēgi, cōactus.

concern, it concerns, interest, esse, fuit.

concerning, dē, *prep. w. abl.*

confer, colloquor, ī, locūtus sum.

conference, colloquium, ī (II), n.

consul, cōsul, is, m.

consult (*with*), dēliberō, ī.

contend, dimicō, ī.

contented, contentus, a, um.

council, concilium, ī (II), n.

country, native country, patria, ae, f.

courageously, audācter, *from adj.* audāx, ācis.

cowardly, ignāvus, a, um.

Crassus, Crassus, ī, m.

cross, trānsēō, ire, īi, itūrus.

danger, periculum, ī, n.

dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep.*

daughter, filia, ae, f.

day, diēs, ei, m.

decide, cōstitutō, ere, ul, ūtus.
decree, dēcernō, ere, crēvi, crētus.
deep, altus, a, um.
defend, dēfendō, ere, fendi, fēnsus.
deliberate, dēliberō, ūre, ūvi, ūtus.
delight, dēlectō, l.
demand, flāgitō, l.
depth, altitūdō, inis, f.
desire, wish, optō, l.
difficult, difficilis, e.
dignity, dignitās, ātis, f.
discover, reperīō, ūre, repperī, reper-

ire.

dismiss, dimittō, ere, misi, missus.
distant, be distant, absum, esse,
āful, āfutūrus.
do, faciō, ere, fēci, factus.
doubt, be in doubt, dubitō, l.
drive back, repellō, ere, reppulī,
repulsus.
drive out, expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus.
duty, officium, l (II), a.

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque.
each (of two), uterque, utraque,
utrumque.
each other, sui, sibi, sē; also nōs,
vōs used reflexively (§ 289).
eager, alacer, alacris, alacre.
easily, facile, from adj. facilis, e.
easy, facilis, e.
else, alius, a, ud.
embankment, rampart, agger, eris,

■

encourage, incitō, l.
endeavor, cōnor, ūri, ūtus sum,
dep.
endure, perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.
enemy (in military sense), hostis, is,
c.; (collectively) hostēs, ium, m.
enemy (personal), inimicus, l, m.
enough, satis (§ 236).
entreat, implorō, l.
envoy, legātus, l, m.
establish, cōfirmō, l.

even, etiam.
not even, nō . . . quidem, with the
emphatic word or phrase between.
ever, always, semper.
exhaust, wear out, cōficiō, ere,
fēci, fectus.
expect, expectō, l.

family (stock), genus, eris, a.
farmer, agricola, ae, m.
father, pater, patria, m.
favor, beneficium, l (II), a.
fear (noun), timor, ūris, m.
fear (verb), timeō, ūre, ul.
fellow citizen, civis, is, m.
fertile, ferāx, ūcis.
few, pauci, ae, a.
field, ager, agri, m.
fiercely, ācriter; from the adj.,
ācer, ācris, acre.
fifteen, quindecim.
fight, pugnō, l.
fill up, complēō, ūre, ūvi, ūtus.
find (by searching), reperīō, ūre, rep-
peri, repertus.
find (come upon), invenīō, ūre, vēni,
ventus.
first, adj., primus, a, um.
first, adv., primum.
fit out, equip, instruō, ere, ūxi,
ūctus.
five, quinque.
flee, flee from, fugiō, ere, fugī,
fugitūrus.
fleet, classis, is, f.
(following), on the following day,
postridiē.
fond, fond of, cupidus, a, um.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
forage, pābulum, l, a.
ford, vadum, l, a.
forest, silva, ae, f.
forget, obliviscor, l, oblitus sum.
fortify, mūnīō, ūre, ūvi, ūtus.
fortune, fortūna, ae, f.

fortune (*in sense of property*), fortunæ, Ærum, *f.*

four, quattuor.

free (*adj.*), liber, a, um.

free, set free, liberō, 1.

friend, amicus, 1, m.

friendship, amicitia, æ, *f.*

from, ā, ab.

from, out of, ē, ex.

from (= of), with verbs of demanding, etc., ā, ab.

from, after verbs of hindering, etc., quōminus, nē.

front (*adj.*), primus, a, um.

Galba, Galba, æ, m.

garrison, praesidium, 1 (II), n.

gate, porta, æ, *f.*

Gaul (*a Gaul*), Gallus, 1, m.

Gaul (*the country*), Gallia, æ, *f.*

Geneva, Genava, æ, *f.*

German (*a German*), Germānus, 1,

Germany, Germānia, æ, *f.*

get ready (*trans.*), parō, 1.

give, dō, dare, dedi, datus.

glad, laetus, a, um.

go, eō, ire, ivi (II), itum (§ 197).

go around, circumeō, ire, ivi (II), itus (§ 197).

go away, abeō, ire, ii, itūrus.

good, bonus, a, um.

great, magnus, a, um (§ 78).

greatest (*of qualities*), summus, a,

greatly, magnopere.

(ground), on the ground that, quod.

guard, watch, tueor, ēri.

Haedui, Haedui, ōrum, m.

happen, be done, fiō, fieri, factus

happen, it happens, it befalls, impersonal, accidit, ere, accidit.

happy, beātus, a, um.

harass, vexō, āre, āvi, ātus.

harbor, portus, ūs, m.

harm, dētrimentum, 1, n.

hate, ōdi, ōdisse (§ 198).

have, habēō, ēre, ul, itus.

he, is (ea, id) (§ 94).

hear, audiō, ire, ivi, itus.

heart, courage, animus, 1, m.

help, auxilium, 1 (II), n.

Helvetii, Helvētīi, ōrum, m.

her, suus, a, um (§ 87, 1), reflexive.

here, hic.

high, altus, a, um.

highest (*of qualities*), summus, a,

hill, collis, is, m.

himself, herself, etc., sui, sibi, sē, reflexive.

hinder, impede, impediō, ire, ivi, itus.

his, suus, a, um, reflexive.

(home), at home, domi (§ 277, 2).

home (to one's home), domum (§ 216, 1, d).

honor, honor, ōris, m.

hope, spēs, ei, *f.*

horseman, eques, itis, m.

hostage, obses, idis, c.

house, domus, ūs, *f.*

how much, followed by gen. of the whole (§ 286), quantum.

how many, quot, indecl.

hundred, centum.

hurry, contendō, ere, tendi, tentum.

I, ego, mei.

if, si, conj.

in, in, prep. w. abl.

inasmuch as, quoniam (§ 819).

increase (*trans.*), augeō, āre, auxi, auctus.

infantry, peditēs, um, m.

inform, certiorē faciō, ere, feci, factus.

- be informed, certior fiō, fieri, factus sum.
- inhabitant, incola, ae, m.
- injure, noceō, ere, ul, itūrus, *with the dat.* (§ 220, II, a).
- into, in, *prep. w. acc.*
- island, insula, ae, f.
- Italy, Italia, ae, f.
- javelin, telum, l, n.
- join (battle), committō, ere, mīsi, missus.
- keep away, ward off, prohibeō, ēre, ul, itus.
- kill, interficio, ere, fēci, fectus.
- king, rēx, rēgis, m.
- know, sciō, ire, ivi, itus.
- lack, be lacking, dēsum, dēesse, dēfui (§ 182).
- land, ager, agri, m.
- land (*as opposed to the water*), terra, ae, f.
- large, magnus, a, um (§ 73).
- last, last part of, *limiting a noun*, extrēmus, a, um (§ 283, 1).
- law, statute, lēx, lēgis, f.
- lead, dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus.
- lead, lead out, lead away, dēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus.
- lead across, trādūco, ere, dūxi, ductus.
- leader, dux, ducia, c.
- leave, relinqūō, ere, hīqui, lictus.
- legion, legiō, ōnia, f.
- lend (*help*), ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.
- less, minus.
- lest, nē.
- letter (*an epistle*), litterae, ārum, f.
- liberty, libertās, ātis, f.
- lieutenant, lēgātus, l, m.
- life, vita, ae, f.
- like, similis, e.
- line of battle, acies, ei, f.
- little (*a little*), paulum.
- long (*adj.*), longus, a, um.
- long (*adv.*), diū.
- love, amō, āre, āvi, ātus.
- loyalty, fidēs, ei, f.
- make, faciō, ere, fēci, factus.
- make (*somebody or something safe, bold, clear, etc.*), reddō, ere, reddidi, redditus.
- man, homō, inis, c., *the general term; man as opposed to woman, or as a complimentary designation*, vir, viri, m.
- many, multi, ae, a; *very many*, complūrēs, a; *gen.* complūrium.
- march (*noun*), iter, itineris, n.
- march (*verb*), iter facere, *lit.*, make a march.
- march forth, ēgredior, i, gressus sum.
- messenger, nūntius, i (ii), m.
- mile, mille passūs, *lit.*, thousand paces; *pl.*, milia passuum.
- money, pecūnia, ae, f.
- more (*adv.*), magis.
- more (*substantive*), plūs, plūris, n.
- most, plērique, aequē, aequē.
- mountain, mōns, montis, m.
- move, moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus.
- much, multus, a, um.
- my, meus, a, um.
- name, nōmen, inis, n.
- narrow, angustus, a, um.
- naval, nāvālis, e.
- necessary, it is necessary, necesse est.
- need, there is need, opus est (§ 258, 2).
- neglect, neglegō, ere, lēxi, lēctus.
- next, proximus, a, um (§ 73, 1; 228).
- no, nūllus, a, um; *in answers, see* § 203, 3.
- no one, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī, *acc.* nēminem; *gen. and abl.*, wanting.

noble, nōbilis, e.
 not, nōn, nē.
 (not), is not? does not? etc.,
 nōnne (§ 203, 2).
 not even, nē . . . quidem, *with the
 emphatic word between.*
 not yet, nōndum.
 nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
 now (at the present time), nunc.
 number, numerus, 1, m.

of, concerning, dē, *prep. w. abl.*
 often, saepe.
 on, in, *prep. w. abl.*
 on all sides, undique, *adv.*
 one, ūnus, a, um.
 one . . . another, alius . . . alius;
 the one . . . the other, alter . . .
 alter.

onset, impetus, ūs, m.
 opinion, sententia, ae, f.
 opportunity, occasiō, ōnis, f.
 order, levy, imperō, 1.
 order, command, jubeō, ēre, jussī,
 jussus.
 other, another, alius, a, ud.
 other, the other, alter, a, um.
 others, all the others, cēteri, ae, a.
 ought, dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus; it be-
 hooves, oportet, ēre, oportuit.
 our, our own, noster, tra, trum.
 overcome, superō, āre, āvī, ātus.

pace (= 5 feet), passus, ūs, m.
 part, pars, partis, f.
 peace, pāx, pācis, f.
 people, populus, 1, m.
 perish, intereō, ire, īl, itūrus (§ 197).
 permit, permittō, ere, mīsi, mis-
 sus.
 persuade, persuādeō, ēre, suāsi, suā-
 sum (§ 220, II, a).
 pity, misericordia, ae, f.
 pity, it excites pity, miserat, mise-
 rāre, miseruit, *impersonal.*

place, locus, 1, m.
 place in charge, in command over,
 praeficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, *with the
 dat. of indirect obj.*
 plan, cōsillium, 1, n.
 plunder, diripiō, ere, ripui, reptus.
 Pompey, Pompejus, Pompel, m.
 power, potestās, ātis, f.; *denotes the
 power that is vested in an official.*
 praise, laudō, 1.
 prefer, mālō, māllo, mālui (§ 192).
 present, give, dōnō, 1.
 present, be present, adsum, esse,
 fūi, futūrus.
 prevail, valeō, ere, valui, itūrus.
 put in charge, praeficiō, ere, fēci,
 fectus (§ 220, III).
 put to flight, fugō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 quickly, celeriter, *adv., from the adj.,*
 celer, eris, ere.

rampart, agger, eris, m.
 ravage, vexō, 1.
 receive, accipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus.
 recollection, memoria, ae, f.
 regret, it causes regret, paenitet,
 ēre, uit, *impersonal* (§ 245).
 remain, maneō, ēre, mānsi, mān-
 sūrus.
 remaining, reliquus, a, um.
 remember, bear in mind, meminī,
 isse (§ 242).
 remind, admoneō, ēre, uī, itus.
 reply, respondeō, ēre, respondi,
 respōsus.
 report (noun), fāma, ae, f.
 report (verb), nūntiō, 1.
 reputation, fāma, ae, f.
 request, seek, petō, ere, petivi (II),
 itus.
 resist, resistō, ere, restitī, *with
 dat.*
 rest, the rest, cēteri, ae, a.
 retard, tardō, 1.

- return (*intrans.*), revertor, I; redeō,
 ire, ii, itum.
 reward, praemium, I (II), n.
 Rhine, Rhēnus, I, m.
 river, flūmen, inis, n.
 Roman, Rōmānus, a, um; a Roman,
 Rōmānus, I, m.
 Rome, Rōma, ae, f.
 safety, salūs, ūtis, f.
 sake, for the sake, causā, with *gen.*;
 the *gen.* always precedes.
 same, Idem, eadem, idem (§ 95); at
 same time, simul.
 save, servō, I.
 say, dicō, ere, dixi, dictus.
 scarcely, vix.
 sea, mare, is, n.
 see, videō, ēre, vidi, visus.
 seem, videor, ēri, visus sum.
 seize, occupō, I.
 self, oneself, sui, sibi, sē.
 self (*i.e. I myself, you yourself, etc.*),
 ipse in apposition with the subject
 or object.
 sell, vëndō, ere, vëndidī, vënditus.
 senate, senātus, ūs, m.
 send, mittō, ere, misi, missus.
 Sequani, Sēquani, ōrum, m.
 set out, proficiscor, I, fectus sum.
 she, ea, f. of is (§ 94).
 ship, nāvis, is, f.
 (sides) on all, undique.
 since (*causal*), cum.
 six, sex, *indecl.*
 slave, servus, I, m.
 small, parvus, a, um (§ 73).
 so (*of degree*), tam.
 so, thus (*of manner*), ita, sic.
 so great, tantus, a, um.
 so many, tot, *indecl.*
 soldier, miles, itis, m.
 some, something, aliquis, aliqua,
 aliquid or aliquod.
 some . . . others, alii . . . alii.
 son, filius, I, m.
 Spain, Hispānia, ae, f.
 spare, parcō, ere, peperci, parsūrus
 (§ 220, II, a).
 speak, loquor, I, locūtus sum; dicō,
 ere, dixi, dictus.
 standard, signum, I, n.
 state, civitas, ātis, f.
 station, collocō, I.
 stone, lapis, idis, m.
 such, tālis, e.
 suddenly, subito.
 suffer, patior, I, passus sum.
 suitable, idōneus, a, um.
 summer, aestās, ātis, f.
 summon, vocō, I.
 (superior), be superior to, superō, I.
 surpass, superō, I.
 surrender (oneself), dēdō, ere, dē-
 didi, dēditus.
 surround, circumveniō, ire, vēni,
 ventus.
 suspicion, suspiciō, ōnis, f.
 sword, gladius, I (II), m.
 take, seize, capiō, ere, cēpi, captus.
 take by storm, expugnō, I.
 talent, talentum, I, n.
 tarry, moror, āri, ātus sum.
 teach, doceō, ēre, ui, doctus.
 tell, say, dicō, ere, dixi, dictus.
 ten, decem, *indecl.*
 terrify, perterreō, ēre, ui, territus.
 than, quam, *conj.*; see also § 254.
 that, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud.
 that of yours, iste, ista, istud.
 that, *rel. pron.*, qui, quae, quod.
 that, in order that, ut; qui, quae,
 quod *w. the subj.*; *w. comp.*, quō.
 that, on the ground that, quod.
 that, lest, with verbs of fearing, nē.
 that not, in order that not, nē.
 that not, with verbs of fearing, ut.
 that (*of result*), ut.
 that not, ut nōn.

their, *their own*, suus, a, um.
 they, *see he, she, etc.*
 thing, res, rei, f.
 this, hic, haec, hoc.
 those, *as antecedent of rel.*, ei, eae, ea.
 thou, tū, tui.
 though, quamquam, quamvis, etiam, cum.
 thousand, mille; *pl.*, millia, ium, n.
 three, trēs, tria.
 three hundred, trecenti, ae, a.
 till, dum, donec, conj.
 time, tempus, oris, n.
 to, ad, prep. w. acc.
 (top) top of, *with a noun*, summus, a, um (§ 283).
 torture, supplicium, i (ii), n.
 touch, moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus.
 tower, turris, is, f.
 town, oppidum, i, n.
 tree, arbor, oris, f.
 trench, fossa, ae, f.
 tribe, gens, gentis, f.
 tribune, tribunus, i, m.
 troops, copiae, arum, f.
 trust, confidēre, fuis sum, *semi-dep.* (§ 220, II, a).
 try, make trial, temptō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 twenty, viginti.
 two, duo, duae, duo.

under, sub, prep. w. acc.
 unharmed, incolumis, e.
 until, dum, donec, quoad.
 unwilling, invitus, a, um; *be unwilling*, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.
 us, nōs, nostrum, nostri, *pl. of ego*.
Cf. § 287, 2.
 use, ūtor, i, ūsus sum.

valor, virtus, ūtis, f.
 Veneti, Veneti. ōrum, m.
 very many, complūrēs, a; *gen.*, complūrium.

victory, victōria, ae, f.
 village, vicus, i, m.
 virtue, virtus, ūtis, f.
 voice, vōx, vōcis, f.
 wage, gerō, ere, gessi, gestus.
 wait, expectō, i.
 war, bellum, i, n.
 watch, vigilia, ae, f.
 welcome, grātus, a, um.
 what? quis (qui), quae, quid (quod)
 whatever, quisquis, quidquid.
 when? quandō.
 when, *rel.*, ubi, ut, cum.
 where? ubi.
 where, *rel.*, ubi.
 whether, num, -ne.
 whither, quō.
 while, conj., dum (§ 331).
 who? quis.
 who, which, *rel. pron.*, qui, quae, quod.
 whole, tōtus, a, um (§ 61).
 winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, n.
 wish, volō, velle, volui.
 with, cum, prep. w. abl.
 withdraw, discēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus.
 without, sine, prep. w. abl.
 withstand, sustineō, ēre, ul, tentus.
 word, verbum, i, n.
 work (*a work*), opus, eris, n.
 worthy, dignus, a, um.
 wound (*noun*), vulnus, eris, n.
 wound (*verb*), vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 write, scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptus.
 year, annus, i, m.
 yes, *see* § 203, 3.
 yet, not yet, nōndum.
 you, tū, tui.
 young man, adulescēns, entis, m.
 your, your own, tuus, a, um; *vester*, tra, trum.

